

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

HOLDEN

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

In the event of a Safety Recall, or for various reasons, Holden may need to contact you as the owner of this vehicle.

If you have recently changed your address, or name, or purchased this vehicle second-hand, please help us to help you by taking a few minutes to fill in and mail the forms at the beginning of the Service/warranty booklet.

For information about GM Holden's privacy policy or to update owner details online, please visit Holden's website at www.holden.com.au

Note Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ warranty booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92275641
July 2014 (MY14 Volt. Print 1)

© 2014 GM Holden Ltd
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232

2014 Holden Volt Owner Manual

In Brief 1-1
Instrument Panel 1-2
Initial Drive Information 1-4
Vehicle Features 1-14
Battery and Efficiency 1-15
Performance and Maintenance 1-21

Keys, Doors, and Windows 2-1
Keys and Locks 2-1
Doors 2-11
Vehicle Security 2-12
Exterior Mirrors 2-15
Interior Mirrors 2-16
Windows 2-16

Seats and Restraints 3-1
Head Restraints 3-1
Front Seats 3-3
Rear Seats 3-7
Seat Belts 3-9
Airbag System 3-15
Child Restraints 3-19

Storage 4-1
Storage Compartments 4-1
Additional Storage Features ... 4-4

Instruments and Controls 5-1
Controls 5-2
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-5
Information Displays 5-23
Vehicle Messages 5-39
Vehicle Personalisation 5-47

Lighting 6-1
Exterior Lighting 6-1
Interior Lighting 6-5
Lighting Features 6-6

Infotainment System 7-1
Introduction 7-1
Radio 7-10
Audio Players 7-23
Navigation 7-33
Voice Recognition 7-53
Bluetooth Phone/Devices 7-58

Climate Controls 8-1
Climate Control Systems 8-1
Air Vents 8-8

Driving and Operating 9-1
Driving Information 9-2
Starting and Operating 9-11
Electric Vehicle Operating Modes 9-16
Engine Exhaust 9-21
Electric Drive Unit 9-22
Brakes 9-24
Ride Control Systems 9-27
Cruise Control 9-30
Driver Assistance Systems ... 9-32
Charging 9-41
Fuel 9-49
Towing 9-51
Conversions and Add-Ons ... 9-51

2014 Holden Volt Owner Manual

Vehicle Care 10-1
General Information 10-2
Vehicle Checks 10-5
Headlamp Aiming 10-25
Bulb Replacement 10-25
Electrical System 10-28
Wheels and Tyres 10-37
Jump Starting 10-57
Towing the Vehicle 10-63
Appearance Care 10-66

Service and Maintenance ... 11-1
General Information 11-1
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 11-2

Technical Data 12-1
Vehicle Identification 12-1
Vehicle Data 12-3

Customer Information 13-1
Customer Information 13-1
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-5

Index i-1



The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, HOLDEN, the HOLDEN Emblem, VOLT, and the VOLT logo are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle either because they are options that you did not purchase or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual. Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness, and economy.

This owner's manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- The “In Brief” section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The Index will enable you to search for specific information.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ Danger provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ Warning provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

⚠ Caution

Text marked ⚠ Caution provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a service/warranty booklet for additional instructions or information.

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

/ : Audio Steering Wheel Controls

BRAKE : Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System (12-Volt Battery)

: Cruise Control

: Electric Parking Brake

: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fault

: First Responder

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: High Voltage

: Top Tether Anchor Fittings

: Leaf

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Seat Belt Reminders

: StabiliTrak®/ESC Disable

: Tyre Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control System (TCS) Disable

READY : Vehicle Ready

: Windscreen Washer Fluid

In Brief

Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel Overview 1-2

Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information 1-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-4
Remote Start 1-4
Door Locks 1-5
Windows 1-7
Seat Adjustment 1-7
Heated Seats 1-8
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-9
Seat Belts 1-10
Mirror Adjustment 1-10
Steering Wheel Adjustment 1-11
Exterior Lighting 1-11
Horn 1-11
Windscreen Wiper/Washer ... 1-11
Climate Controls 1-12

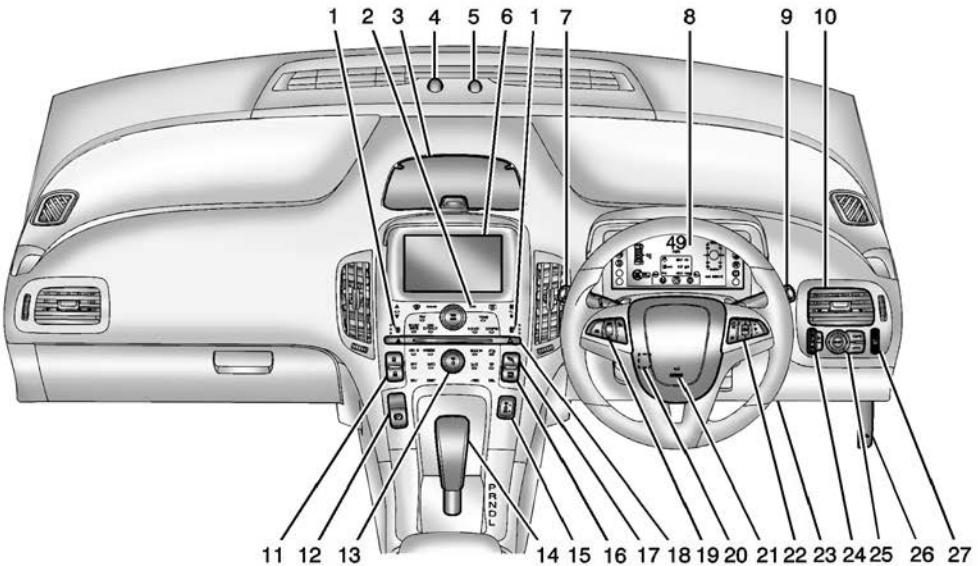
Vehicle Features
Radio(s) 1-14
Portable Audio Devices 1-14
Bluetooth® 1-14
Steering Wheel Controls 1-15
Navigation System 1-15

Battery and Efficiency
High Voltage Safety Information 1-15
Charging 1-16
Fuelling 1-19
Total Vehicle Range 1-20
Regenerative Braking 1-20
Service 1-20

Performance and Maintenance
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 1-21
Tyre Pressure Monitor 1-21
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 1-22
Engine Oil Life System 1-22
Driving for Better Energy Efficiency 1-22

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5*.
2. *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.
3. *Instrument Panel Storage on page 4-1*.
4. Charging Status Indicator. See *Charging Status Feedback on page 9-44*.
5. Light Sensor. See *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) on page 6-2*.
6. *Centre Stack Display on page 5-23*.
7. Turn Signal Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-4*.

   Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1.

   Pedestrian Alert on page 5-3.
8. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-6*.

   Driver Information Centre (DIC) Display. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37*.
9. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3*.
10. *Air Vents on page 8-8*.
11. *Power Door Locks on page 2-9*.
12. *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25*.
13. Infotainment. See *Overview on page 7-1*.

    Navigation System. See *Using the Navigation System on page 7-33*.
14. Shift Lever. See *Electric Drive Unit on page 9-22*.
15. *Power Button on page 9-11*.
16. Drive Mode Button. See *Driver Mode on page 9-17*.
17. Leaf Button. See *Centre Stack Display on page 5-23*.
18. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.
19. *Cruise Control on page 9-30*.

    Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-32

    Lane Departure Warning (LDW) on page 9-39
20. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2*.
21. *Horn on page 5-3*.
22. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2*.
23. Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-14*.
24. *Headlamp Levelling Control on page 6-3*.
25. Driver Information Centre (DIC) Controls. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37*.
26. Bonnet Release. See *Bonnet on page 10-5*.
27. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-5*.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter may work up to 60 m (195 ft) away from the vehicle.



Press the key release button to extend the key. The key can be used for all locks.

: Press once to unlock the driver door. Press a second time within five seconds to unlock all doors.

: Press to lock all doors.

Lock and unlock feedback can be personalised. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

: Press and release to initiate vehicle locator. Press and hold for three seconds to sound the panic alarm. Press again to cancel the panic alarm.

: Press and release and then immediately press and hold for at least four seconds to start the vehicle's heating or air conditioning systems and rear window demister from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Start on page 2-6*.

: Press and hold to immediately charge the vehicle and temporarily override the delayed charging. See *Plug-In Charging on page 9-41*.

See *Keys on page 2-1* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

Remote Start

Use remote start to heat or cool the interior when the vehicle is plugged in to maximise electric range by utilising electricity from the electrical

outlet. The engine may start to support the climate control operation. Normal operation of the system will return after the vehicle has been turned on.

Activating the Remote Start

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter; the doors will lock.
2. Immediately, press and hold until the turn signal lamps flash, or for at least four seconds. Pressing again during a remote start will turn the feature off.

After entering the vehicle during a remote start, press the POWER button on the centre stack with the brake pedal applied to operate as normal.

Cancelling Remote Start

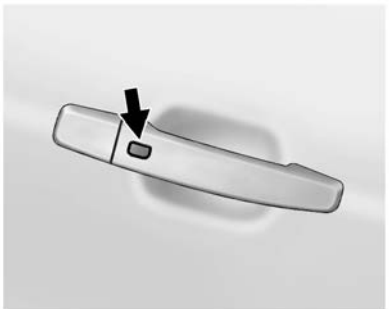
To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Press the POWER button on the centre stack, with the brake pedal applied, then press the POWER button again to turn the vehicle off.

See *Remote Start on page 2-6*.

Door Locks

Keyless Access



When the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door, the door can be locked and unlocked by pressing the door handle button. When unlocking from the driver's door, the first press will unlock only that door; press again within five seconds to unlock all passenger doors. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)

The RKE transmitter must be within 60 m (195 ft) of the vehicle.

: Press to unlock.

: Press to lock.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

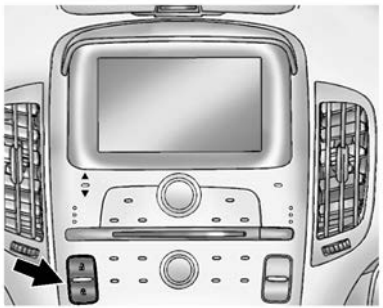
Key

To unlock or lock the door, turn the key left or right.

Inside the Vehicle

Push down on the door lock knob to lock that door. Pull once on the door handle to unlock the door and again to open the door. Press the power door lock switch to lock or unlock all doors. See *Door Locks on page 2-8* and *Power Door Locks on page 2-9*.

Power Door Locks



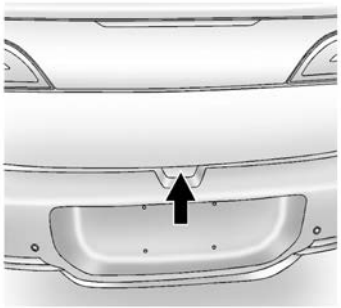
The power door lock switches are on the centre stack.

: Press to unlock.

: Press to lock.

See *Power Door Locks on page 2-9*.

Hatch

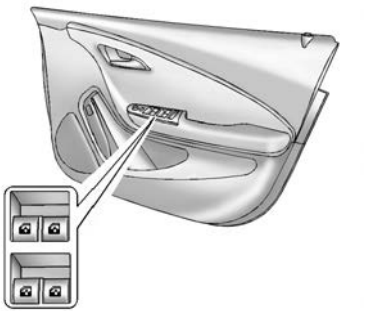


Keyless Access: To open the hatch with the vehicle locked, the RKE transmitter must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the hatch. Press the button on the underside of the hatch and lift up. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE): To open the hatch with the vehicle locked, the RKE transmitter must be within 60 m (195 ft) of the vehicle. Unlock the vehicle with the RKE

transmitter, then press the button on the underside of the hatch and lift. See *Hatch on page 2-11*.

Windows



The power window switches are on the driver door armrest. Each passenger door has a switch that controls only that window.

Press the front of the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it.

The driver and passenger windows have an express-down feature and the driver window has express-up.

See *Power Windows on page 2-16*.

Remote Window Operation

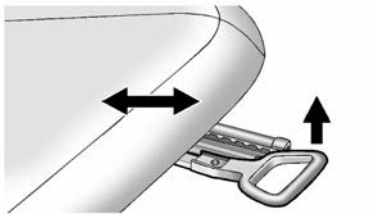


The vehicle may have remote operating windows that will open all the windows from outside the vehicle by pressing and holding on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

See *Power Windows on page 2-16*.

Seat Adjustment

Seat Position

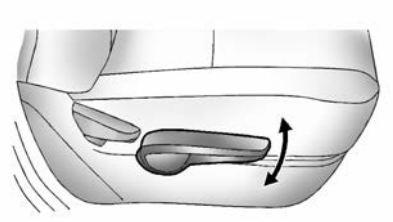


To adjust the seat position:

1. Pull the handle at the front of the seat cushion to unlock it.
2. Move the seat forward or rearward and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

See *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3*.

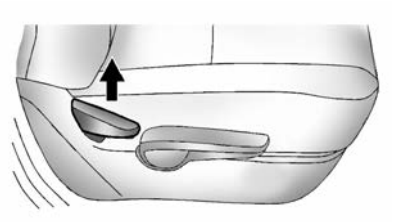
Height Adjustment



Move the lever up or down to raise or lower the seat.

See “Seat Height Adjuster” under *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3*.

Reclining Seatbacks



To recline the seatback:

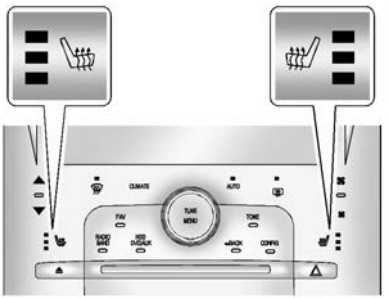
1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

See *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-4*.

Heated Seats



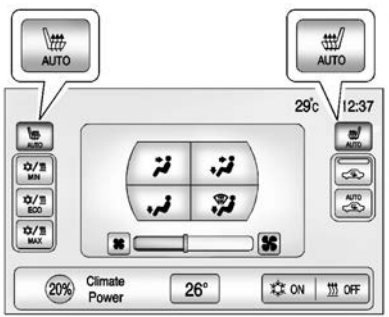
The controls are on the centre stack. To operate, the vehicle must be on.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then the off setting. Three lights indicate the highest setting and one light the lowest.

See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5*.

Auto Heated Seats



The controls can be accessed while the vehicle is on by pressing the CLIMATE button on the centre stack.

Press the touch screen AUTO or AUTO button. The button colour will change to green when this feature is on.

When the vehicle is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature. The active high, medium, low, or off heated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated seat button lights on the centre stack. Use the touch screen buttons or the manual heated seat buttons on the centre stack to turn auto heated seats off.

See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5*.

The heated seats can also be programmed to come on during a remote start. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Head Restraint Adjustment

⚠ Warning

This safety feature is not intended to rest the head upon. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle. The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

See *Head Restraints on page 3-1* and *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3*.

Seat Belts



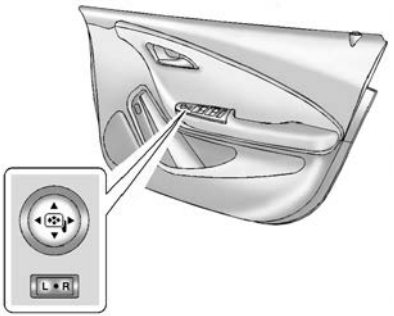
Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use seat belts properly:

- *Seat Belts on page 3-9*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-11*.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior

See *Folding Mirrors on page 2-15*.



To adjust a mirror:

1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the passenger or driver mirror.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move each mirror in the desired direction.
3. Return the selector switch to the centre position.

See *Power Mirrors on page 2-15*.

When the rear window demister is activated, the heated mirrors will also come on. See *Heated Mirrors on page 2-15*.

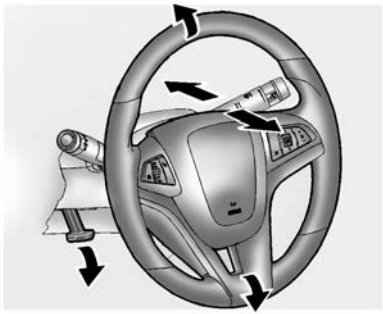
Mirrors can be folded inward toward the vehicle to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

Interior

To adjust the inside rear view mirror, hold the rear view mirror in the centre and move it to view the area behind the vehicle.

The automatic dimming rear view mirror will automatically reduce the glare from the headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started. See *Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror on page 2-16*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment

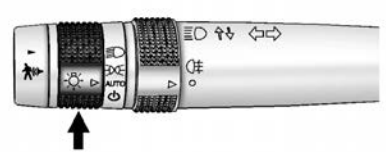


To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Exterior Lighting



The exterior lamp control is on the turn signal lever.

: Turn to operate the exterior lamps.

: Turns the exterior lamps off.

AUTO: Turns the exterior lamps on and off automatically depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the park lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

: Turns on the headlamps together with the park lamps and instrument panel lights.

For more information, see:

- *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.
- *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-4*.
- *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-1*.

Horn

Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

The pedestrian alert provides momentary soft-note horn sound. See *Pedestrian Alert on page 5-3* for more information.

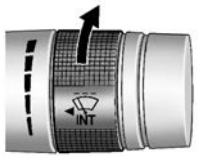
Windscreen Wiper/ Washer



With the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the lever to select the wiper speed.

HI: Use for fast wipes.

LO: Use for slow wipes.



INT: Move the lever up to INT for intermittent wipes, then turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

OFF: Use to turn the wipers off.

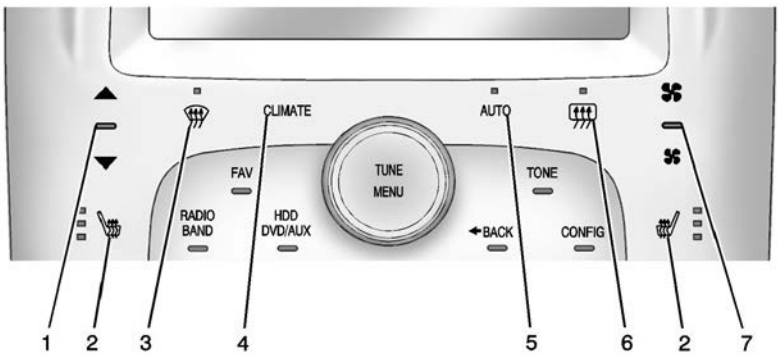
1X : For a single wipe, briefly move the lever down. For several wipes, hold the lever down.

: Pull the lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers.

See *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3*.

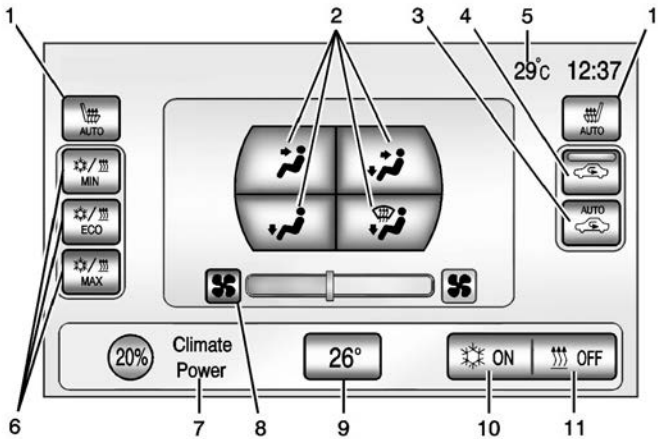
Climate Controls

Heating, cooling, and ventilation can be controlled by using the climate control buttons and the climate touch screen.



Climate Control Buttons

1. Temperature Control
2. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats
3. Defrost
4. Climate
5. Auto (Automatic Operation)
6. Rear Window Demister
7. Manual Fan Control



Climate Touch Screen Controls

1. Driver and Passenger Auto Heated Seats
2. Air Delivery Mode Controls
3. Auto Recirculation
4. Manual Recirculation
5. Outside Air Temperature Display
6. Climate Modes
7. Climate Power Gauge
8. Manual Fan Control
9. Temperature Setting Display
10. Air Conditioning Indicator
11. Heat Status Indicator

See *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.

Auto heated seats are selected using the climate control touch screen. See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5*.

Vehicle Features

Radio(s)

VOL/ ⏻ : Press to turn the system on and off. Turn to increase or decrease the volume.

RADIO/BAND: Press to choose between FM and AM.

TUNE/MENU: Turn to select radio stations. Press to select a menu.

⏪ SEEK: Press to seek the previous station or track.

SEEK ⏩ : Press to seek the next station or track.

INFO: Press to show date and time.

See *Overview on page 7-1* for more information about these and other radio features.

Storing a Favourite Station

Stations from all bands can be stored in the favourite lists in any order. Up to six stations can be stored in each favourite page and the number of available favourite pages can be set.

To store the station to a position in the list, press the corresponding numeric button 1−6 until a beep is heard.

See “Storing a Station as a Favourite” in *AM-FM Radio on page 7-10* for more information.

Setting the Clock

Adjusting the Time

The clock is in the centre stack display. See *Clock on page 5-36*.

Portable Audio Devices

This vehicle has a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) auxiliary input and a USB port in the centre console. External devices such as iPods®, laptop computers, MP3 players, and USB storage devices may be connected.

See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31*.

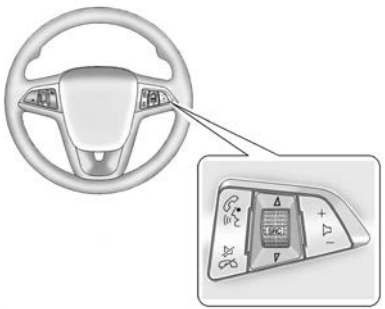
Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth® system allows users with a Bluetooth®-enabled mobile phone to make and receive hands-free calls using the vehicle audio system and controls.

The Bluetooth®-enabled mobile phone must be paired with the in-vehicle Bluetooth® system before it can be used in the vehicle. Not all phones will support all functions.

See *Bluetooth on page 7-58*.

Steering Wheel Controls



/ : Press to interact with the phone or navigation system.

/ : Press to mute. Press again to turn the sound on. Press to reject an incoming call, or to end a current call.

SRC : Use to select a radio band or audio source.

Use or to select the next or previous favourite radio station, CD track or MP3 track.

Press SRC to change between radio and CD.

+ −: Press + to increase or − to decrease the volume.

See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2*.

Navigation System

The vehicle's navigation system is displayed on the centre stack display where information about the radio and audio players is also displayed.

The navigation system provides detailed maps of most major freeways and roads. After a destination has been set, the system provides turn-by-turn instructions for reaching the destination. In addition, the system can help locate a variety of POIs (Points of Interest), such as banks, airports, restaurants, and more.

See Infotainment *Using the Navigation System on page 7-33* for more information.

Battery and Efficiency

High Voltage Safety Information

⚠ Danger

Exposure to high voltage can cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training.

High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

This vehicle has a high voltage battery and a standard 12-volt battery.

If the vehicle is in a crash, the sensing system may shut down the high voltage system. When this occurs, the high voltage battery is disconnected and the vehicle will not start. The SERVICE VEHICLE SOON message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will be displayed. Before the vehicle can be operated again, it must be serviced at your dealer.

See *Battery on page 10-21* for important safety information.

Only a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools should inspect, test, or replace the high voltage battery. See your dealer if the high voltage battery needs service.

See *Battery on page 10-21*.

Charging

This section explains the process for charging the high voltage battery. Do not allow the vehicle to remain in temperature extremes for long periods without being driven or plugged in. It is recommended that the vehicle be plugged in when temperatures are below 0°C and above 32°C to maximise high voltage battery life.

When using a 230-volt AC electrical outlet, it will take approximately six hours to charge the vehicle with the 10 amp AC current setting or 11 hours using the default 6 amp AC current setting. When using a 230-volt charging station with 16 amp AC current capability, it will take approximately four hours to charge the vehicle. Charge times will vary with outside temperature. There are three ways to program how the vehicle is charged. See *Charging on page 5-25*.

The charging system may run fans and pumps that result in sounds from the vehicle while it is turned off. Additional unexpected clicking sounds may be caused by the electrical devices used while charging.

While the charge cord is plugged into the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be driven.

Charging

Start Charge

1. Make sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and turned off.
2. Push the rearward edge of the charge port door in and release to open the door.

   In cold weather conditions, ice may form around the charge port door. Remove ice from the area before attempting to open or close the charge port door.



3. Open the rear hatch, lift the load support floor covering, and remove the charge cord. It is located near the tyre sealant and compressor kit. Pull up on the charge cord handle to release. The vehicle plug is stored as shown.
4. Plug the charge cord into the electrical outlet. Verify that the charge cord status indicators are both green. See *Charge Cord on page 9-46*. Select the appropriate charge level. On some models, charge level selection can be made using the Select Charge Level Preference screen on the centre stack. See “Charge Level Selection” under *Charging on page 5-25*. On some models, charge level selection can be made using the charge level button on the charge cord. See “Charge Level Button” under *Charge Cord on page 9-46*.



5. Plug in the vehicle plug of the charge cord into the charge port on the vehicle. Verify that the charging status indicator illuminates on top of the instrument panel and a horn chirp occurs. See *Charging Status Feedback on page 9-44*.
6. To arm the charge cord theft alert, lock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter. To disable this feature, see “Charge Cord Theft Alert” in *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

End Charge

1. Unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter to disarm the charge cord theft alert.



2. Unplug the vehicle plug of the charge cord from the vehicle.
3. Close the charge port door by pressing firmly on the rearward edge of the door surface.
4. Unplug the charge cord from the electrical outlet.
5. Place the charge cord into the storage compartment.

Charge Cord

A portable charge cord used to charge the vehicle high voltage battery is stored under the load support floor covering in the rear cargo area.

Important Information About Portable Electric Vehicle Charging

- Charging an electric vehicle can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug in to any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions, and protection devices) for heavy-duty service at a 10 amp continuous load.
- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over time, making them unsuitable for electric vehicle charging.
- Check the electrical outlet/plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet/plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.
- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weather-proof while in use.
- Mount the charging cord to reduce strain on the electrical outlet/plug.

⚠ Warning

Improper use of portable electric vehicle charge cords may cause a fire, electrical shock, or burns, and may result in damage to property, serious injury, or death.

- Do not use extension cords, multi-outlet power strips, splitters, grounding adaptors, surge protectors, or similar devices.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not use an electrical outlet that is worn or damaged, or one that will not hold the plug firmly in place.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is not properly grounded.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is on a circuit with other electrical loads.

Charge Cord Status Indicators

See “Charge Cord Status Indicators” in the charge cord user guide.

Charge Level Selection

Charge level selection can be made using the Select Charge Level Preference screen on the centre stack. See “Charge Level Selection” under *Charging on page 5-25*.

⚠ Warning

Using a charge level that exceeds the electrical circuit or electrical outlet capacity may start a fire or damage the electrical circuit. Use the lowest charge level until a qualified electrician inspects your electrical circuit capacity. Use the lowest charge level if the electrical circuit or electrical outlet capacity is not known.

Fuelling

The fuel system on this vehicle requires a refuelling process to control evaporative emissions. To refuel the vehicle:



1. Press the fuel door button on the driver door for one second. A WAIT TO REFUEL message displays on the Driver Information Centre.



2. When the READY TO REFUEL message displays, the fuel door on the passenger side will unlock. Push the rearward edge of the fuel door in and release to open the door.
3. Turn the fuel cap anticlockwise to remove. While refuelling, hang the fuel cap tether from the hook on the inside of the fuel door. Complete refuelling within 30 minutes of pressing the fuel door button on the driver door. If refuelling more than 30 minutes, press the fuel door button again.
4. After refuelling, reinstall the fuel cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks. Close the fuel door.

See *Refuelling on page 9-50*.

Total Vehicle Range



Total vehicle range is the remaining distance the vehicle can be driven when combining the electric range and fuel range.

See *Driving for Better Energy Efficiency on page 9-2*.

Regenerative Braking

Regenerative braking takes some of the energy from the moving vehicle and turns it back into electrical energy. This energy is then stored in the high voltage battery system, contributing to increased energy efficiency.

See *Regenerative Braking on page 9-27*.

Service

⚠ Danger

Never try to do your own service on high voltage components. Exposure to high voltage can cause shock, burns and even death. The vehicle can be damaged if you try to do your own service work. Service and repair of these high voltage components should only be performed by a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 10-5*.

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

The TCS limits wheel spin. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is on.

The Electronic Stability Control system called StabiliTrak assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is on.

- To turn off traction control, press and release the OFF button on the overhead console. illuminates and the appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-44*.
- Press and release the OFF button again to turn on traction control.
- To turn off both traction control and StabiliTrak, press and hold the OFF button on the overhead console, until and OFF illuminate in the instrument cluster and the appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-44*.
- Press and release the OFF button to turn on both systems.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-27*.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

The vehicle has a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).



The low tyre pressure warning light alerts to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tyres. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the tyre placard. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*. The warning light will remain on until the tyre pressure is corrected.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This may be an early indicator that the tyre pressures are getting low and the tyres need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tyre maintenance. Maintain the correct tyre pressures.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-40*.

Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

This vehicle has a tyre sealant and compressor kit that can be used to seal small punctures in the tread area of the tyre. Significant sidewall damage will require the tyre to be replaced.

See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-50* for complete operating information.

Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

Resetting the Oil Life System

1. Select OIL LIFE on the DIC menu.
2. Press SELECT to start the OIL LIFE reset procedure.
3. The DIC menu will display “Are you sure that you want to reset?” Use SELECT to choose YES to reset oil life or NO to exit and return to the previous menu.
4. If YES is selected, the DIC menu will display RESET OIL LIFE for a short time and then 100% OIL LIFE will be displayed when the oil life system is successfully reset.

See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-11*.

Driving for Better Energy Efficiency

Use the following tips to help maximise energy efficiency and range.

In colder temperatures, while these efficiency tips will help, the electric vehicle driving range may be lower due to higher energy usage.

Driving Style

Efficiency Gauge (Instrument Cluster)

The ball indicator should be kept green and in the centre of the gauge.

Inefficient acceleration is indicated when the ball turns yellow and travels above the centre of the gauge.

Aggressive braking is indicated when the ball turns yellow and travels below the centre of the gauge.

Acceleration/Braking/Coasting

Avoid unnecessary rapid accelerations and decelerations.

Electric range is maximised at 80 km/h and below. Higher speeds use more energy and can significantly reduce electric range.

Use cruise control when appropriate.

Plan ahead for decelerations and coast whenever possible. For example, do not rush to traffic signals.

Do not shift to N (Neutral) to coast. The vehicle recovers energy while coasting and braking in D (Drive) or L (Low).

Drive Mode and PRNDL Selection

Use Normal Mode when possible.

Sport Mode provides more responsive acceleration than Normal Mode but can reduce efficiency.

Use Hold Mode on a trip where all or most of the electric charge will be depleted. Use Hold Mode mainly during highway or high-speed driving to maximise both EV miles and fuel efficiency.

Use L (Low) in heavy stop-and-go traffic or when travelling downhill. L (Low) requires less brake pedal application and provides a controlled, efficient way to slow the vehicle down.

Climate Setting

Using the heat and air conditioning systems decreases the energy available for electric driving.

Optimal energy efficiency is achieved with the heat, air conditioning, and fan turned off.

Less energy is used at low fan speeds. When using the fan:

- Fan Only is the most energy efficient climate setting as long as  is not selected.
- ECO is for moderate air conditioning and heater operation and is the next most energy efficient setting as long as  is not selected.
- Comfort provides the most comfort but is the least energy efficient.

Use the auto heated seat feature instead of climate settings. Heating the seat uses less energy than heating the vehicle interior.

Use remote start to heat or cool the interior when the vehicle is plugged in to maximise the electric range by utilising electricity from the electrical socket.

Engine Assisted Heating operation, if equipped, can be personalised. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

In hot weather, avoid parking in direct sunlight or use sunshades inside the vehicle.

Turn off the front and rear window demist/defrost when they are no longer needed.

Avoid driving with the windows open at highway speeds.

Vehicle Charging/Maintenance

Charging

Keep the vehicle plugged in, even when fully charged, to keep the battery temperature ready for the next drive. This is important when outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold.

Maintenance

Always keep the tyres properly inflated and the wheels properly aligned.

The weight of excess cargo in the vehicle affects efficiency and range. Avoid carrying more than is needed.

If fuel is not regularly used, consider keeping the fuel tank only one-third full. Excess fuel weight impacts efficiency and range.

Use unleaded petrol of premium 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher.

Avoid unnecessary use of electrical accessories. Power used for functions other than propelling the vehicle will reduce EV range.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 2-1
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-2
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-2
Remote Start 2-6
Door Locks 2-8
Power Door Locks 2-9
Automatic Door Locks 2-9
Lockout Protection 2-10
Safety Locks 2-10

Doors
Hatch 2-11

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Security 2-12
Vehicle Alarm System 2-12
Anti-theft Locking System 2-14
Immobiliser Operation 2-14

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 2-15
Power Mirrors 2-15
Folding Mirrors 2-15
Heated Mirrors 2-15

Interior Mirrors
Interior Rear view Mirrors 2-16
Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror 2-16

Windows
Windows 2-16
Power Windows 2-16
Sun Visors 2-18

Keys and Locks

Keys

The key that is part of the RKE transmitter can be used for all locks.

⚠ Danger

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.



- Press the key release button on the RKE transmitter to extend the key.
- Press the key release button and fold the key blade to retract the key.

The key has a bar-coded key tag that the dealer or qualified locksmith can use to make new keys. Store this information in a safe place, not in the vehicle.

See your dealer if a replacement key or an additional key is needed.

If it becomes difficult to turn the key in a vehicle lock, inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush or pick.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE. This could void authorisation to use this equipment.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Keyless Access system allows for vehicle entry when the transmitter is within range. See “Keyless Access Operation” later in this section.

The RKE transmitter functions may work up to 60 m away from the vehicle.

Other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.



(Unlock): Press once to unlock the driver door. Press a second time within five seconds to unlock all doors.

The hazard warning lamps will flash twice each time the button is pressed and the anti-theft alarm system will be disarmed. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-12*.

On vehicles with remote operating windows, pressing and holding will open all of the vehicle's windows. See *Power Windows on page 2-16*. This feature can be disabled by a service technician.

(Lock): Press to lock all doors. The hazard warning lamps will flash once and the anti-theft alarm system will be armed. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-12*.

Pressing two times within five seconds with all doors closed and the vehicle turned off will lock all of the doors and activate the anti-theft locking system. See *Anti-theft Locking System on page 2-14*.

If the driver door is open when is pressed, all doors lock and then the driver door will unlock if the Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out feature is enabled through vehicle personalisation. See “Open Door Anti Lock Out” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*. This may vary based on vehicle personalisation.

(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and release one time to initiate vehicle locator. The exterior lamps flash and the horn chirps three times. Press and hold for three seconds to sound the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash for 30 seconds. Press again to cancel the panic alarm.

(Remote Start): Press and release and then immediately press and hold for at least four seconds to start the vehicle's heating or air conditioning systems and rear window demister from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Start on page 2-6*.

The vehicle has auto heated seats, which can be programmed to come on when the vehicle is remotely started. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*. Also see “Auto Heated Seats” under *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5*.

The vehicle may have Engine Assisted Heating, which can be personalised. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

(Charge Vehicle/Delayed Charging Override): Press and hold to immediately charge the vehicle and temporarily override the delayed charging. See *Plug-In Charging on page 9-41*.

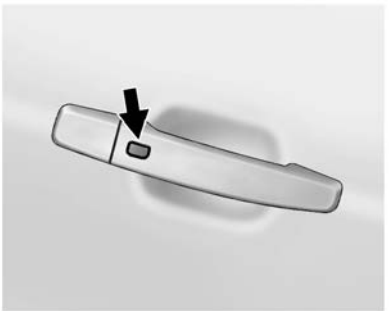
Keyless Access Operation

To lock and unlock the doors and access the hatch, the RKE transmitter should be within 1 m of the door or hatch.

The Keyless Access can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first unlock/lock button press from the driver door. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the driver door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the driver door handle will unlock the driver door. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock.



Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first lock/unlock button press.
- Two lock/unlock button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Pressing the driver door handle lock/unlock button two times within five seconds under the above conditions will result in the doors becoming locked and the anti-theft locking system activated.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from Passenger Doors

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on that door handle will unlock all doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock under any of the following conditions:

- After the lock/unlock button was used to unlock all doors.
- After any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Passive Locking

This feature will lock the vehicle several seconds after all doors are closed, if the vehicle is off and at

least one RKE transmitter has been removed from the interior or none remain in the interior.

Temporary Disable Passive Locking Feature

Temporarily disable the passive locking by pressing and holding on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

To customise the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see “Remote Locking, Unlocking, Starting” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

⚠ Caution

It is recommended that the RKE transmitter is kept on your person at all times. Shielding of the RKE

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

transmitter or environmental electromagnetic radiation can interfere with the passive locking function.

Keyless Hatch Opening

Press the button on the underside of the hatch and lift up to open if the RKE transmitter is within 1 m and the doors are locked. If the doors are unlocked, the transmitter is not required to open the hatch.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it. See your dealer to program transmitters to this vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

If the transmitter battery is weak or there is interference with the signal, the DIC may display NO REMOTE DETECTED or PLACE TRANSMITTER IN POCKET when you try to start the vehicle. The REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message may also be displayed at this time.

To start the vehicle:

1. Open the instrument panel storage and remove the rubber mat.



2. Extend the key blade and place the blade into the slot.
3. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and the POWER ⏻ button on the centre stack. See *Power Button on page 9-11* for additional information.

Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

⚠ Warning

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

⚠ Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

To replace the battery:

1. Extend the key blade and open the battery cover on the back of the unit.
2. Remove the used battery. Avoid touching the circuit board to other components.
3. Insert the new battery, positive side facing down toward the base.
4. Reassemble the battery cover.
5. Check the operation of the transmitter with the vehicle.

Remote Start

This feature starts the heating or air conditioning systems and rear window demister from outside the vehicle. Use remote start to heat or cool the interior when the vehicle is plugged in to maximise the electric range by utilising electricity from the electrical socket. Normal operation of the system will return after the vehicle has been turned on.

(Remote Start): This button is on the RKE transmitter.

During remote start:

- The climate control system will typically default to the last climate setting. If the fan is off or if Fan Only was selected, the air conditioning or heat will turn on

as needed. See *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.

- If the heated seats feature has been enabled through vehicle personalisation, the heated seats will turn on during colder outside temperatures. See “Remote Start Heated Seats” under *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5* and “Remote Start Auto Heated Seats” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.
- The rear demister will turn on during colder outside temperatures.
- Selecting during colder outside temperatures before shutting the vehicle off will help windscreen clearing.
- Shutting the vehicle off in ECO Mode without selected will minimise the impact to electric range. Shutting the vehicle off in other modes will maximise heating or air conditioning.
- The engine may start to provide energy for heating and cooling, independent of the vehicle being plugged in or completely charged. Engine Assisted Heating operation, if available, can be personalised. See “Engine Assisted Heating” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.
- Vehicle range may decrease if the vehicle is not plugged into an electrical socket. If the vehicle is plugged in, much of the energy needed to support this feature will be provided from the electrical socket, not from the high voltage battery.

The RKE transmitter range may be less while the vehicle is running.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-2*.

Activating the Remote Start

To heat or cool the passenger compartment using remote start:

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter; the doors will lock.
2. Immediately, press and hold until the turn signal lamps flash, or for at least four seconds.

   Pressing again during a remote start will turn the feature off.

Remote start will automatically shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension is done.

While the remote start is active, the park lamps will turn on and remain on.

After entering the vehicle during a remote start, press the POWER button on the centre stack with the brake pedal applied to operate as normal.

The remote start can be initiated two separate times between driving. For each remote start, the passenger compartment will be heated or cooled for 10 minutes.

Extending Engine Run Time

The engine run time can also be extended by another 10 minutes, if during the first 10 minutes Steps 1–2 are repeated while the engine is still running. This provides a total of 20 minutes.

The remote start can only be extended once.

When the remote start is extended, the second 10-minute period is added on to the first 10 minutes for a total of 20 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a remote start with an extension, are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be changed to ON/RUN/START and then back to OFF before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold ⏀ until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Press the POWER ⏻ button on the centre stack, with the brake pedal applied, then press the POWER ⏻ button again to turn the vehicle off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start May Not Work

Conditions in which a remote start may not occur include:

- An open bonnet.
- Vehicle propulsion system fault conditions, including an emission control system malfunction.
- High voltage battery fault conditions.

A second remote start or extension will not occur if the fuel level is low.

During a remote start, conditions in which a remote start may be cancelled include:

- Vehicle propulsion system or high voltage battery fault conditions.
- Low engine oil pressure.
- Engine coolant temperature that is too high.

Door Locks

⚠ Danger

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when slowing or stopping the vehicle. Lock the doors to help prevent this from happening.

Keyless Access



When the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door, the door can be locked and unlocked by pressing the door handle button. When unlocking from the driver's door, the first press will unlock only that door; press again within five seconds to unlock all passenger doors. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

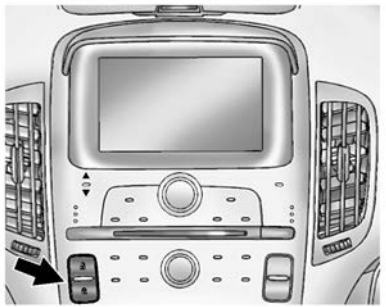
Key

To unlock or lock the door, turn the key left or right.

Inside the Vehicle

Push down on the door lock knob to lock that door. Pull once on the door handle to unlock the door and again to open the door. Press the power door lock switch to lock or unlock all doors. See *Power Door Locks on page 2-9*.

Power Door Locks



The power door lock switches are on the centre stack.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the doors.

(Lock): Press to lock the doors.

Automatic Door Locks

Automatic Door Lock

The doors can be programmed to automatically lock when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park).

See “Power Door Locks” in *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Automatic Door Unlock

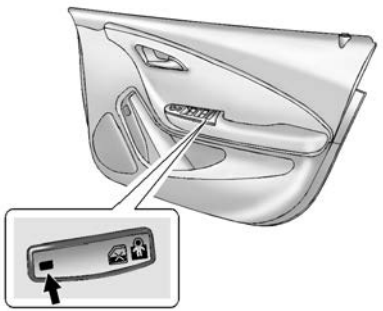
If Automatic Door Locking is turned on, then all doors will automatically unlock when the shift lever is moved into P (Park).

Lockout Protection

If the power door lock switch is pressed when the driver door is open and the vehicle is on, all the doors will lock and then the driver door will unlock.

This feature can also be enabled to function when the vehicle is off. To enable this feature, see “Open Door Anti Lock Out” in *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Safety Locks



The rear door safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.

Press to activate the rear door safety locks. The indicator light comes on when activated.

Press again to deactivate the safety locks.

If an inside rear door handle is being pulled at the same time a safety lock is deactivated, only that door will remain locked and the indicator light may flash. Release the handle, then press the safety lock twice to deactivate the safety locks.

Doors

Hatch

⚠ Danger

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven in Extended Range Mode with the hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the hatch. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven in Extended Range Mode with the hatch open:

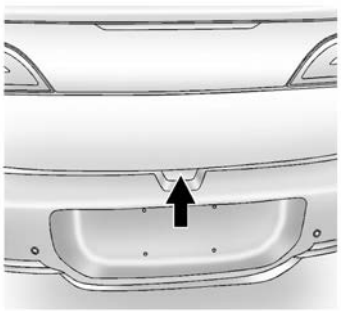
- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on the instrument panel.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

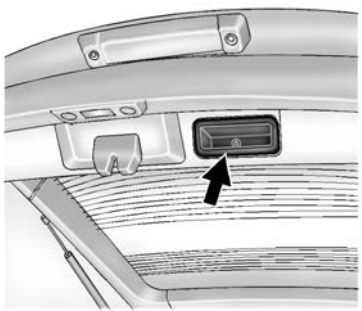
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-21*.



Keyless Access: To open the hatch with the vehicle locked, the RKE transmitter must be within 1 m of the boot. Press the button on the underside of the hatch and lift up. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE): To open the hatch with the vehicle locked, the RKE transmitter must be within 60 m of the vehicle. Unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter, then press the button on the underside of the hatch and lift.



Use the inside pull handle to lower and close the hatch.

Always close the hatch before driving. Do not press the button while closing the hatch; it will unlatch again.

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.

Arming the Alarm System

1. Close the hatch and the bonnet. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
   - Use the RKE transmitter.
   - Use the Keyless Access system.
   - With a door open, press on the centre stack.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm. Pressing on the RKE transmitter a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

If a door, the bonnet, or the hatch is opened, or there is an attempt to remove the charge cord, without first disarming the system, the turn signals will flash and the horn will sound for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorised event.

The theft-deterrent alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the key.

The Charge Cord Theft Alert feature may be disabled through the vehicle personalisation. See “Charge Cord Theft Alert” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated:

- Press on the RKE transmitter.

- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or use the Keyless Access system.

Unlocking the driver door with the key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If is pressed on the transmitter and the horn chirps three times, a previous alarm occurred while the system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC. See *Security Messages on page 5-45*.

Power Sounder, Inclination Sensor and Intrusion Sensor

In addition to the standard theft-deterrent system features, this system also has a power sounder, an inclination sensor and intrusion sensor.

The power sounder provides an audible alarm which is distinct from the vehicle's horn. It has its own power source, and can sound and alarm when the vehicle's battery is compromised.

The inclination sensor can set off the alarm if it senses movement of the vehicle, such as a change in vehicle orientation.

The intrusion sensor monitors the vehicle interior, and can trigger the alarm if it senses unauthorised entry into the vehicle's interior. Do not allow passengers or pets to remain in the vehicle when the intrusion sensor is activated.

Before arming the theft-deterrent system and activating the intrusion sensor, do the following:

- Make sure all doors and windows are completely closed.
- Secure any loose items such as sunshades.
- Make sure there are no obstructions blocking the sensors.

Intrusion and Inclination Sensors Disable Switch

It is recommended that the inclination sensors be deactivated if pets are left in the vehicle or the vehicle is being transported.

With the vehicle turned off, press on the overhead console. The indicator light will come on momentarily, indicating that these sensors have been disabled for the next alarm system arming cycle.

Anti-theft Locking System

The vehicle is equipped with a deadbolt locking feature in addition to the standard door locks.

The deadbolt is engaged whenever you press on the RKE transmitter twice within five seconds with all doors closed and the vehicle off. The deadbolt lock can also be engaged with the Keyless Access system. See “Keyless Access Operation” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

When the doors are secured with the deadbolt, the manual door lock controls will not unlock the doors.

Also, if the theft-deterrent system is armed, the doors cannot be unlocked using the power door lock controls.

Press on the transmitter once to open the deadbolt and unlock the driver door. Pressing the button again within five seconds will unlock all of the doors.

Immobiliser Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system. The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the vehicle is turned off.

The system is automatically disarmed when the vehicle is started with a valid RKE transmitter in the vehicle. The RKE transmitter uses electronic coding that matches an immobiliser control unit in the vehicle and automatically disarms the system. Only a correct transmitter can be used to turn the vehicle on.



The security light in the instrument cluster comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on.

If the vehicle does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Attempt to turn the vehicle off and try it again.

Do not leave the RKE transmitter in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

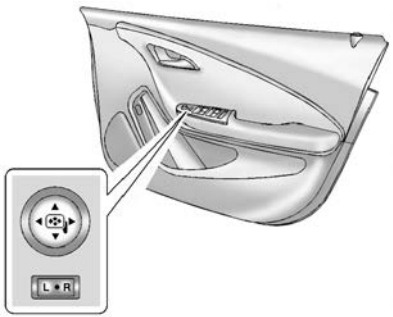
Convex Mirrors

⚠ Warning

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look further away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the other lane, you could hit a vehicle in that lane. Check the inside mirror or look over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The driver and passenger side mirrors are convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Power Mirrors



To adjust a mirror:

1. Move the selector switch to R (Right) or L (Left) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move each mirror in the desired direction.
3. Return the selector switch to the centre position.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding Mirrors

The mirrors can be folded inward toward the vehicle to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

Heated Mirrors

The vehicle has heated mirrors.

(Rear Window Demister): Press to heat the outside rear view mirrors. See “Rear Window Demister” under *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rear view Mirrors

Adjust the rear view mirror for a clear view of the area behind your vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror

The vehicle has an automatic dimming inside rear view mirror. Automatic dimming reduces the glare from the headlamps of the vehicle behind you.

The dimming feature comes on each time the vehicle is started.

Windows

⚠ Danger

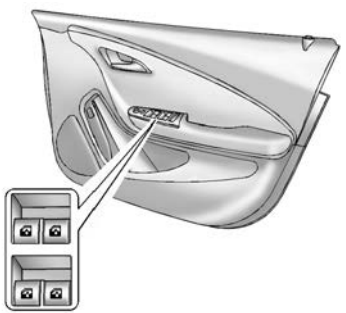
Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open a front window.

Power Windows

⚠ Danger

Children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Never leave keys in a vehicle with children. When there are children in the rear seat, use the window lockout button to prevent operation of the windows. See *Keys on page 2-1*.



Press the front of the switch to open the window. Pull the switch up to close it.

The power windows work when the vehicle is on, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-14*.

Express-Down/Up Windows

Windows with an express-down or up feature allow the window to be lowered or raised without holding the switch. The driver window has express-down and up; the passenger and rear windows have only express-down.

Pull a window switch up or push it down all the way, release it, and the window goes up or down automatically. Stop the window by pushing or pulling the switch.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Feature

If any object is in the path of the window when the express-up is active, the window will stop at the obstruction and auto-reverse to a preset factory position. Weather conditions such as severe icing may also cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will return to normal operation once the obstruction or condition is removed.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Override

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is re-activated.

In this mode, the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

Programming the Power Windows

Programming the power windows may be necessary if the 12-volt battery has been disconnected or discharged.

To program the window:

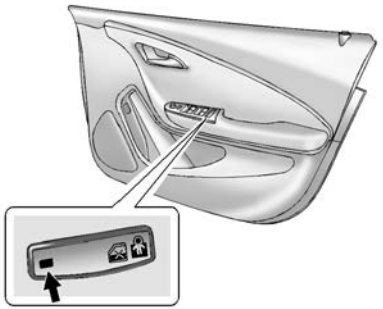
1. Close all doors with the vehicle on, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-14*.
2. Pull the window switch to completely close the window. Continue to hold the window switch two seconds after the window is closed.
3. Repeat for each window.

Remote Window Operation



The vehicle may have remote operating windows that will open all the windows from outside the vehicle by pressing and holding on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Window Lockout

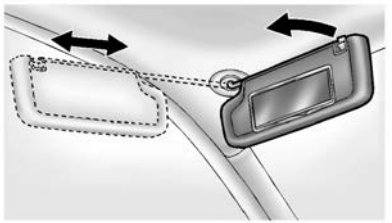


The rear window lockout switch is on the driver door. This feature prevents the rear passenger windows from operating, except from the driver position.

Press to activate the rear window lockout switch. The indicator light comes on when activated.

Press again to deactivate the lockout switch.

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare. If equipped, detach the sun visor from the centre mount to pivot to the side window or to extend along the rod.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 3-1

Front Seats
Seat Adjustment 3-3
Reclining Seatbacks 3-4
Heated Front Seats 3-5

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 3-7

Seat Belts
Seat Belts 3-9
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 3-10
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-11
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 3-14
Safety System Check 3-14
Seat Belt Care 3-14
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 3-14

Airbag System
Airbag System 3-15
Where Are the Airbags? 3-16
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 3-18

Child Restraints
Older Children 3-19
Infants and Young Children 3-21
Child Restraint Systems 3-23
Where to Put the Restraint . . . 3-25
Top Tether Anchor Fittings . . . 3-26
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 3-30
Securing Child Restraints 3-30
Securing Child Restraints (Front passenger seat) 3-31

Head Restraints

⚠ Warning

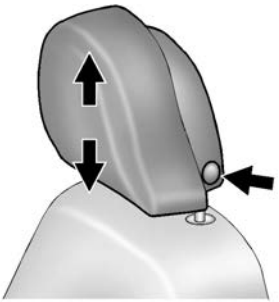
This safety feature is not intended to rest the head upon. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle. The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

Front Seats

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints.

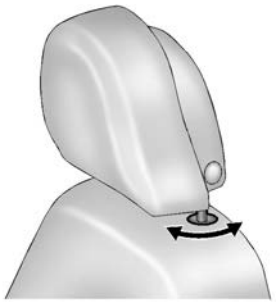


Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in an accident.



To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint and pull up or push the head restraint down and release the button.

Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

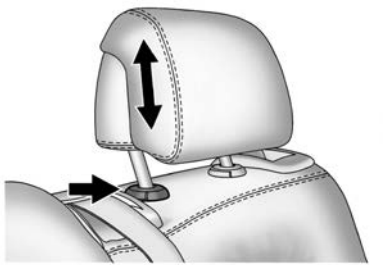


To adjust the head restraint forward, grasp the head restraint at the bottom and pull forward to the desired locked position. To adjust the head restraint rearward, grasp the head restraint at the bottom and pull forward fully until the mechanism releases and allows the head restraint to return to the full rear position.

The front head restraints are not designed to be removed.

Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seats have adjustable head restraints.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

Rear seat head restraints are not designed to be removed.

Front Seats

Seat Adjustment

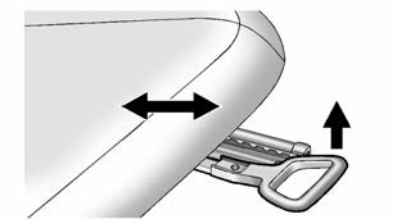
⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers. Unauthorised seat covers may impair the operation of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB). Always sit centrally in the seat. Do not place any object between the seat and the door. See *Airbag System on page 3-15*.

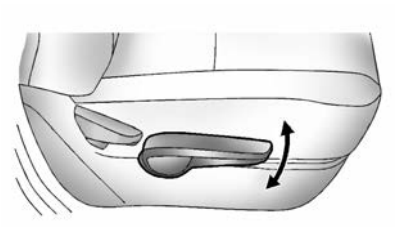
Before moving the seat, ensure that the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.



To adjust the seat position:

1. Pull the handle at the front of the seat cushion to unlock it.
2. Move the seat forward or rearward and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Seat Height Adjuster



Move the lever up or down to raise or lower the seat.

Reclining Seatbacks

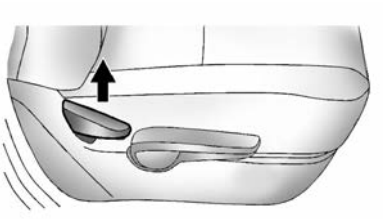
⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

To recline the seatback:



1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.

3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback returns to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

⚠ Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the seat belts cannot do their job.

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly.

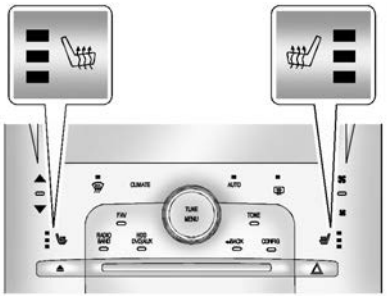


Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

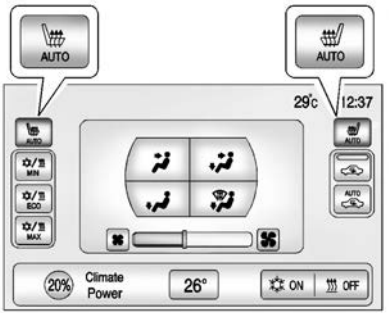


The controls are on the centre stack. To operate, the vehicle must be on.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then the off setting. Three lights indicate the highest setting and one light the lowest.

Auto Heated Seats



The controls can be accessed while the vehicle is on by pressing the CLIMATE button on the centre stack.

Press the touch screen AUTO or AUTO button. The button colour will change to green when this feature is on.

When the vehicle is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature. The active high, medium, low, or off heated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated seat button lights on the centre stack. Use the touch screen buttons or the manual heated seat buttons on the centre stack to turn auto heated seats off.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the auto heated seats feature will not activate that seat.

The auto heated seats feature can be programmed to always be enabled when the vehicle is on. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Remote Start Auto Heated Seats

When it is cold outside, the heated seats can be programmed to turn on automatically during a remote vehicle start. Unless the auto heated seats feature is available and enabled, the heated seats will be cancelled when the vehicle is turned on. If the vehicle has auto heated seats and the feature is enabled, the seat heating level will automatically change to the level

required by the vehicle's interior temperature when the vehicle is turned on.

The indicator lights on the heated seat buttons do not turn on during a remote start.

The temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

The heated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless the heated seats feature is enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Rear Seats

Folding the Seatback

⚠ Warning

Do not pull the release lever on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants. Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on the folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the

(Continued)

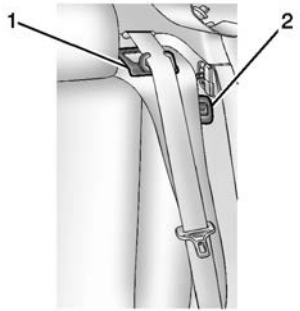
Warning (Continued)

protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To fold the seatback down:

⚠ Caution

Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.



1. Seat belt Guide
2. Seat belt Storage Clip

1. Remove the seat belt from the seat belt guide (1) and place it in the storage clip (2).

   The seat belt should remain in the storage clip while the seatback is in the folded position.

2. Pull the seatback release lever to unlock the seatback.

   A tab near the lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.

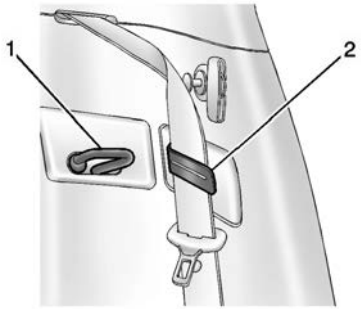
3. Fold the seatback forward.

Raising the Seatback

⚠ Caution

Damage to the seat belt or seatback locking mechanism can occur if the seat belt is caught between the rear seatback and the seatback locking mechanism. The seat belt must be out of the way when the rear seat is raised to the upright, locked position. If the seat belt is damaged, see your dealer and have it replaced.

To raise the seatback:



1. Seatback Locking Mechanism
2. Seat belt Storage Clip

1. Make sure the seat belt is in the storage clip (2) before raising the seatback.

   The seat belt should not cross the seatback locking mechanism (1) when raising the seatback.

2. Raise the seatback and push it rearward to lock it into place.

   A tab near the seatback release lever retracts when the seatback is locked.

3. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
4. Return the seat belt to the seat belt guide after raising the seatback.

Keep the seat in the upright, locked position when not in use.

Seat Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use seat belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with seat belts.



The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle holding the occupants in the sitting position. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time. They are not suitable for people smaller than 150 cm. See *Child Restraint Systems on page 3-23*.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the seat belts. See *Seat Belt Reminders on page 5-12* for additional information.

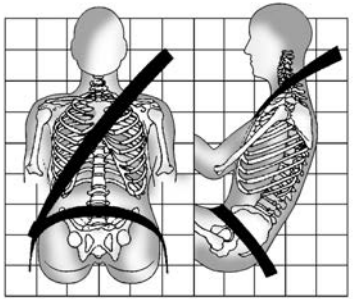
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about seat belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 3-19* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-21*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing seat belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a seat belt properly.



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

⚠ Danger

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your seat belt properly.

- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. If the seat has a seat belt guide, and the seat belt is not routed through the guide, slide the edge of the belt webbing through the opening on the guide. Be sure the belt is not twisted.
2. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
3. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

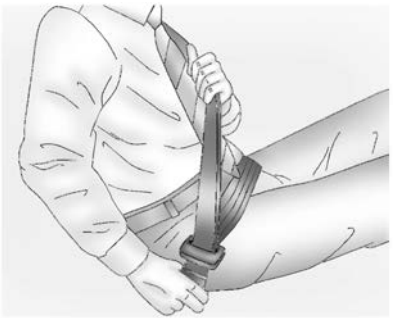
   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

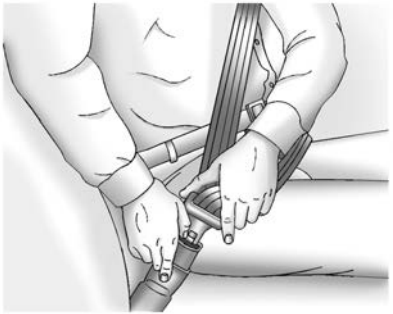
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the seat belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Before a door is closed, be sure the seat belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a seat belt, damage can occur to both the seat belt and the vehicle.

Seat belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has seat belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the seat belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the seat belt assembly. They can help tighten the seat belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met.

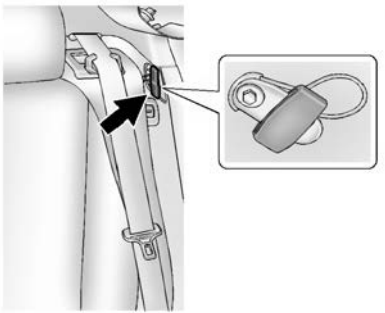
And, if the vehicle has side impact airbags, seat belt pretensioners can help tighten the seat belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, they need to be replaced, and other new parts for the vehicle's seat belt system may be required. See *Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash on page 3-14*.

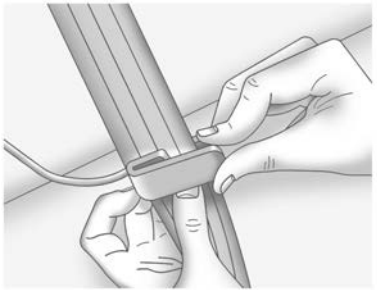
Rear Seat belt Comfort Guides

This vehicle may have rear seat belt comfort guides. The guides may provide added seat belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed and properly adjusted, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

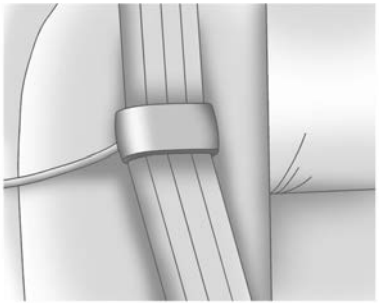
There is one guide, if equipped, for each outside passenger position in the rear seat. When using a comfort guide, remove the seat belt from the seat-mounted guide before using the comfort guide. To install a comfort guide to the seat belt:



1. Remove the guide from its storage clip on the interior body trim next to the rear seat.



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. The belt should not be twisted and it should lie flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



4. Buckle and position the seat belt as described previously in this section. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the seat belt can be

removed from the guide. Slide the guide back into its storage clip located on the interior body trim next to the side of the seatback.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy



⚠ Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the seat belt reminder light, seat belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged seat belt system parts that might keep a seat belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed seat belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the seat belt reminder light is working. See *Seat Belt Reminders on page 5-12*.

Keep seat belts clean and dry. See *Seat Belt Care on page 3-14*.

Seat Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage and proper functionality. Have damaged components replaced.

After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by your dealer.

Note: Make sure that the seat belts are not damaged by shoes or sharped-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Danger

A crash can damage the seat belt system in the vehicle. A damaged seat belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the seat belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of seat belts may not be necessary. But the seat belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the seat belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the seat belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the seat belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13*.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the front passenger.
- A knee airbag for the driver.
- A knee airbag for the front passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front passenger.
- A curtain airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A curtain airbag for the front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front passenger.

All of the airbags in the vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the centre of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front passenger.

For knee airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the lower portion of the instrument panel.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For curtain airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by seat belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Warning

If handled improperly the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

Note: The airbag system and belt pretensioner control electronics are in the centre console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not stick anything on the airbag covers, and do not cover them with other materials.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by your dealer. Furthermore, it might be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

When the airbags inflate, escaping hot gases may cause burns.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13* for more information.

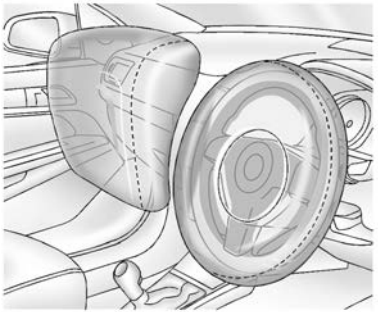
Where Are the Airbags?

Frontal Airbag System

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

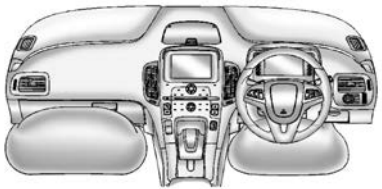
⚠ Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position. Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions. Fit the seat belt correctly and engage it securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.



The driver frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The front passenger frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger side.



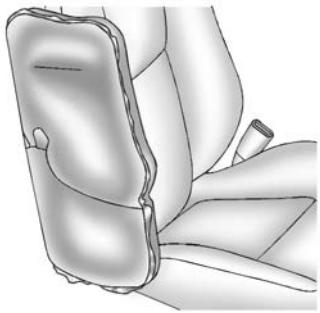
The driver knee airbag is below the steering column. The front passenger knee airbag is below the glove box.

Side Airbag System

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstruction.



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and front passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Note: Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain Airbag System

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably. The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The vehicle needs to be on.

⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions. The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The curtain airbags for the driver, front passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Danger

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle.
A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates or the vehicle has been in a crash, the sensing system may shut down the high voltage system. When this occurs, the high voltage battery is disconnected and the vehicle will not start. The SERVICE VEHICLE SOON message in the Driver

Information Centre (DIC) will be displayed. Before the vehicle can be operated again, it must be serviced at your dealer.

Each airbag is triggered only once. If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. Furthermore, it might be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles, and the seats replaced. See your dealer for service.

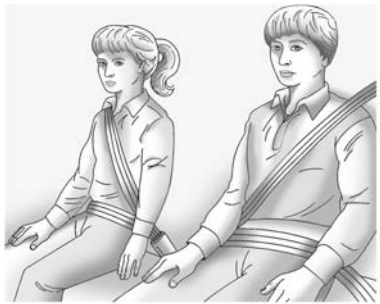
Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

⚠ Warning

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorised service centre, to help protect the environment and your health.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle seat belts.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear seat belt comfort guide. See “Rear Seat belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-11*. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

- Can proper seat belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear seat belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see “Rear Seat belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-11*.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use seat belts properly.

⚠ Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same seat belt. The seat belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A seat belt must be used by only one person at a time.



⚠ Warning

Never allow a child to wear the seat belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance travelled nor the age and size of the traveller changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the seat belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the seat belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither the vehicle's seat belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h, a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



⚠ Danger

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

forward-facing child restraint in the left front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.



Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. In a crash, if an infant is in a rear-facing child restraint, the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

⚠ Danger

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular seat belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems

We recommend a child restraint system that is tailored specifically to the vehicle.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations.



Refer to the airbag warning label on the passenger's sunvisor.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only. The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers are suitably restrained.

In most States and Territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

require children to be seated in approved child restraints. Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint is suitable for your child.

Children should be restrained at all times when travelling in a vehicle.

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Only Standards Australia approved child restraints and harnesses should be used. You should only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

Selecting the Right System

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system. Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Note: Do not stick anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials. A child restraint system that has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Older children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

Where to Put the Restraint



⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent seat belt assemblies or top tether anchor fittings for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the seat belt. See *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-26*.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings

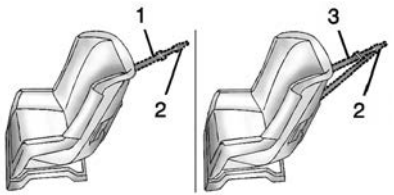
A child restraint may have a top tether.

In order to use the top tether anchor fittings in the vehicle, you need a child restraint that has a top tether. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with a top tether in the vehicle.

Make sure that a top tether-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the top tether anchor fittings, or use the vehicle's seat belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use the seat belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether.

Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have top tether anchor fittings and attachments.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings



A top tether (1, 3) secures the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor fitting is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (2) on the child restraint

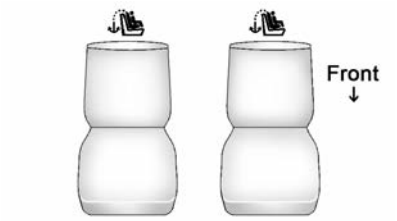
connects to the top tether anchor fitting in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in an accident.

The child restraint may have a single tether (1) or a dual tether (3). Either will have a single attachment (2) to secure the top tether to the anchor fitting.

⚠ Warning

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Top Tether Anchor Fitting Locations

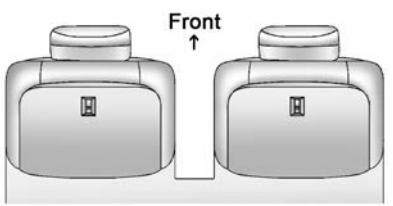


Rear Seats

(Top Tether Anchor Fitting): Seating positions with top tether anchor fittings.



To assist in locating the top tether anchor fitting, the top tether anchor fitting symbol is near the top tether anchor fitting.



Top Tether Anchor Fittings

The top tether anchor fittings for rear seating positions are on the back of the rear seatbacks. Be sure to use an anchor fitting on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor fitting.

⚠ Warning

Accident statistics show that children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size. Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

Securing a Child Restraint Using Top Tether Anchor Fittings

⚠ Danger

If a top tether-equipped child restraint is not attached to an anchor fitting, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a top tether-equipped child restraint properly using the anchor fitting and use the vehicle's seat belts to

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

secure the restraint following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ Warning

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor fitting. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor fitting could cause the anchor fitting or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor fitting.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the seat belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused seat belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if the vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

⚠ Caution

Do not let the top tether attachments rub against the vehicle's seat belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled seat belts to avoid rubbing the top tether attachments.

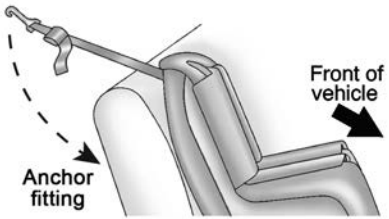
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

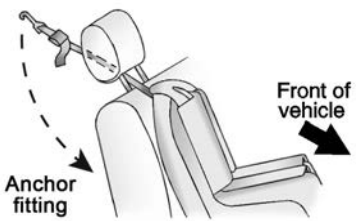
Do not fold the empty rear seat with a seat belt buckled. This could damage the seat belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the seat belt to its stowed position before folding the seat.

Make sure to attach the child restraint at the proper anchor fitting location.

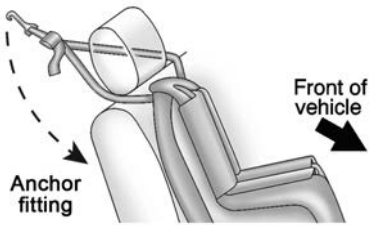
1. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor fitting. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   1.1. Find the top tether anchor fitting on the back of the rear seatback.
   1.2. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to the child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



Single Tether Shown, Dual Tether Similar



If you are using a single tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the head restraint and in between the head restraint posts.



If you are using a dual tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the head restraint and around the head restraint posts.

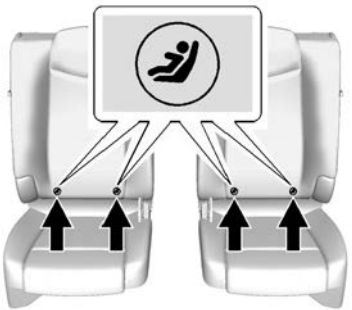
2. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions.

Replacing Restraint System Parts After an Accident

If the top tether anchor fittings were used during an accident, new anchor fittings may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the top tether anchor fittings were not being used at the time of the accident.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by the label on the seatback.

Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the top-tether strap(s) to the top tether anchorage points. See *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-26*.

Securing Child Restraints

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has a top tether, see *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-26* for how and where to install the child restraint using Top Tether Anchor Fittings.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether anchor fittings must be anchored.

Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-25*.

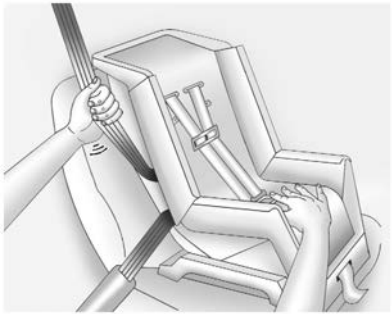
1. Put the child restraint on the seat.

2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's seat belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
5. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-26* for more information.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor fitting, disconnect it.

Securing Child Restraints (Front passenger seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-25*.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

⚠ Danger

A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the outboard front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position. Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the outboard front passenger seat, but always

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. The forward facing child restraint must still be attached to the passenger side child restraint anchorage points, located behind the rear seat. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If the child restraint has a top tether, see *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-26* for how and where to install the child restraint using a top tether. If a child restraint is secured using a seat belt and it uses a top tether, see *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-26* for top tether anchor locations.

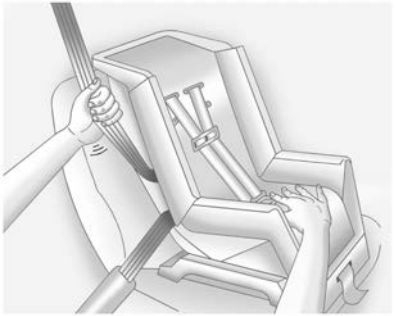
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's seat belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position. If a top tether is attached to the top tether anchor fitting, disconnect it.

✍ NOTES

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 4-1
Instrument Panel Storage 4-1
Glovebox 4-1
Floor Console Storage 4-2
Umbrella Storage 4-4

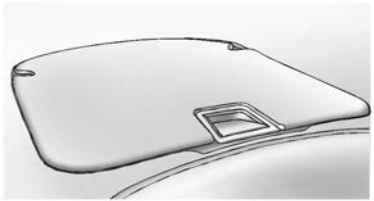
Additional Storage Features
Cargo Cover 4-4

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Instrument Panel Storage



There is a storage compartment on top of the instrument panel that includes an auxiliary power outlet.

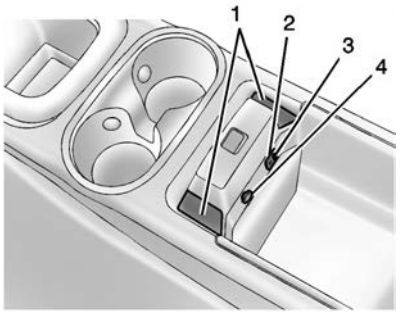
Inside is a transmitter slot for the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

Glovebox

Open the glove box by lifting up on the lever.

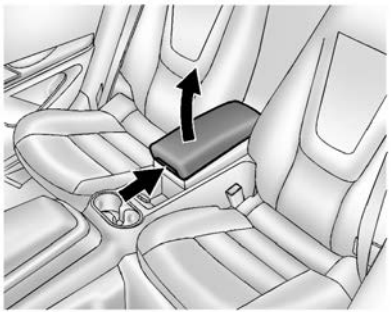
Floor Console Storage

Front Console

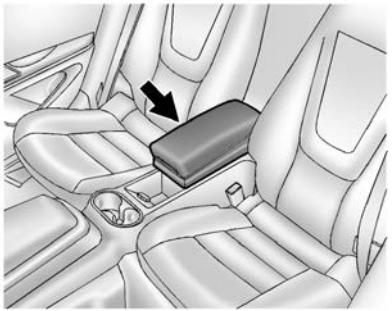


In the armrest storage area there is an auxiliary jack (2), USB port (3), and accessory power outlet (4). Cords from accessories can be routed through the openings (1) on each side. See *USB on page 7-24*. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31*.

Rear Console



Lift the handle to access the storage area.

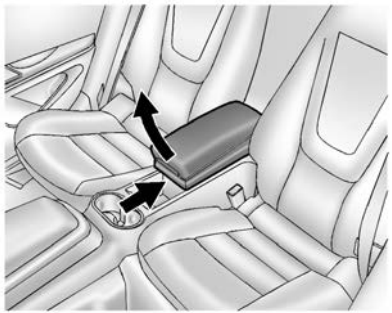


The armrest storage bin is removable.

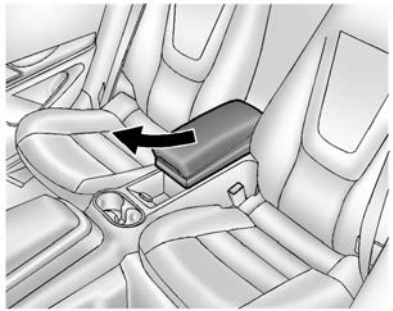
⚠ Warning

An unsecured armrest storage bin could strike people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Store the armrest storage bin securely or remove it from the vehicle.

Removal

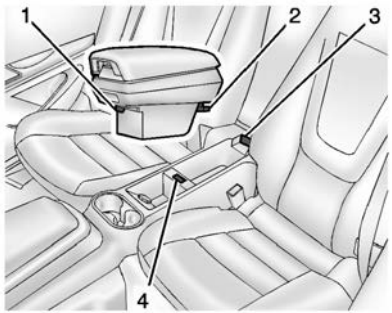


To remove the armrest storage bin, press the button and lift the armrest storage bin up.

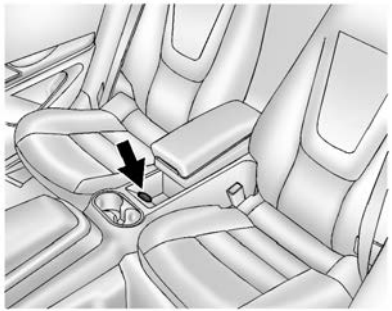


Move the armrest storage bin forward to release it from the rear bracket.

Installation



To install the armrest storage bin, align the bracket (2) on the rear of the armrest storage bin into the slot (3) on the rear console and push the armrest down until the latch (1) locks into the opening (4).



With Removable Armrest Storage Bin Shown, Without Removable Armrest Storage Bin Similar

The console also has an auxiliary power outlet. See *Power Outlets on page 5-4*.

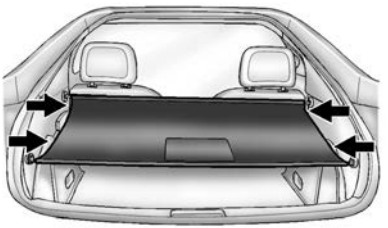
Umbrella Storage



Slide an umbrella into the opening on either the driver or passenger door.

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Cover



There is a cover for the rear cargo area. Use the four cargo cover loops to hook the cover to the side panels.

Instructions and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment ... 5-2
Steering Wheel Controls 5-2
Horn 5-3
Pedestrian Alert 5-3
Windscreen Wiper/Washer 5-3
Power Outlets 5-4

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-5
Instrument Cluster 5-6
Speedometer 5-10
Odometer 5-10
Trip Odometer 5-10
Battery Gauge 5-11
Fuel Gauge 5-11
Driver Efficiency Gauge 5-11
Total Vehicle Range 5-12
Seat Belt Reminders 5-12
Airbag Readiness Light 5-13
Charging System Light (12-Volt Battery) 5-14
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-14
Brake System Warning Light 5-16
Electric Parking Brake Light 5-16
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 5-17
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 5-17
Sport Mode Light 5-18
Hold Mode Light 5-18
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light 5-18
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) Warning Light 5-18
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 5-18
Traction Off Light 5-19
StabiliTrak® OFF Light 5-19
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light 5-19
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 5-20
Tyre Pressure Light 5-20
Engine Oil Pressure Light 5-20
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-21
Security Light 5-21
Vehicle Ready Light 5-21
High-Beam On Light 5-22
Rear Fog Light 5-22
Lamps On Reminder 5-22
Cruise Control Light 5-22
Door, Bonnet, or Hatch Open Light 5-22

Information Displays

Centre Stack Display 5-23
Power Flows 5-24
Charging 5-25
Energy Information 5-35
Clock 5-36
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 5-37

Vehicle Messages

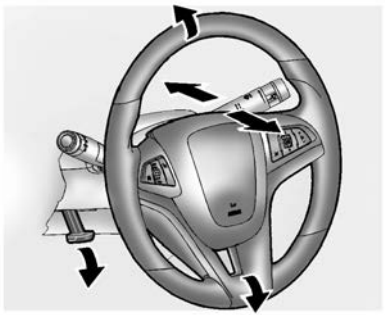
Vehicle Messages 5-39
Battery and Charging Messages 5-39
Brake System Messages 5-40
Cruise Control Messages 5-40
Door open messages 5-40
Drive Mode Messages 5-41
Electric Drive Unit Messages 5-41
Engine Cooling System Messages 5-41
Engine Oil Messages 5-41
Fuel System Messages 5-42

Key and Lock Messages 5-42
Lamp Messages 5-43
Object Detection System Messages 5-43
Propulsion Power Messages 5-44
Ride Control System Messages 5-44
Airbag System Messages 5-45
Security Messages 5-45
Service Vehicle Messages ... 5-45
Starting the Vehicle Messages 5-46
Tyre Messages 5-47
Vehicle Reminder Messages 5-47
Vehicle Speed Messages 5-47

Vehicle Personalisation
Vehicle Personalisation 5-47

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

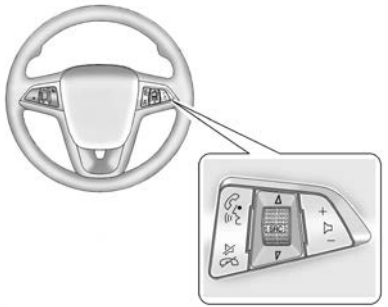


To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Steering Wheel Controls



For vehicles with audio steering wheel controls, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

/ (Push to Talk): Press to interact with Bluetooth® or navigation systems. See *Bluetooth on page 7-58* or *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

/ (End Call/Mute): Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on. Press to reject an incoming call, or to end a current call.

SRC (Rotary Control): Turn or to select a radio band or audio source.

Turn or to select the next or previous favourite radio station, CD track, DVD track/chapter, or MP3 track.

Press SRC to change between radio and CD or DVD.

+ − (Volume): Press + to increase the volume; press − to decrease the volume.

Horn

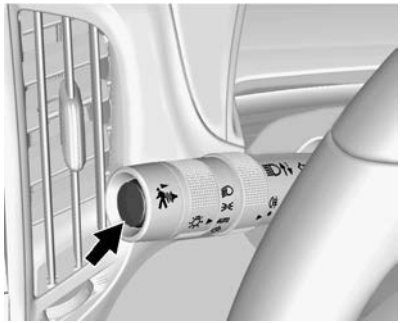
Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

The pedestrian alert provides momentary soft-note horn sound. See *Pedestrian Alert on page 5-3* for more information.

Pedestrian Alert

Use this feature to alert people who may not hear your vehicle approaching.

The pedestrian alert is only available when the vehicle is not in P (Park).



To use the pedestrian alert:

Momentarily push the button on the end of the turn signal lever, and a soft-note alert will momentarily sound.

Repeat for additional activations of the pedestrian alert.

Windscreen Wiper/ Washer

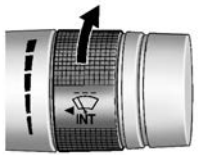


The windscreen wiper/washer lever is on the side of the steering column. With the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the windscreen wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI: Use for fast wipes.

LO: Use for slow wipes.

INT: (Intermittent Wipes): Move the lever up to INT for intermittent wipes, then turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.



OFF: Use to turn the wipers off.

1X (Mist): For a single wipe, briefly move the lever down. For several wipes, hold the lever down.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades and windscreen before using them. If frozen to the windscreen, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. If the wiper motor overheats, the windscreen wipers will stop until the motor cools and the wiper control is turned off. See *Electrical System Overload on page 10-29*.

Wiper Parking

If the ignition is turned to STOPPING THE VEHICLE/OFF while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windscreen wiper lever is then moved to off before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windscreen.

If the ignition is turned to STOPPING THE VEHICLE/OFF while the wipers are performing wipes due to windscreen washing, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windscreen.

↓ **(Windscreen Washer):** Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windscreen washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-18* for information on filling the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windscreen is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windscreen, blocking your vision.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a mobile phone or MP3 player.

There are three accessory power outlets:

- Inside the front of the floor console.
- On the rear of the floor console.

- Inside the instrument panel storage area.

The power outlets supply power while the vehicle is on, or if the vehicle is in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-14*.

Remove the cover to access.

Certain accessory plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-51*.

⚠ Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage that may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as mobile phone charge cords.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the propulsion system is started to indicate they are working.

Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

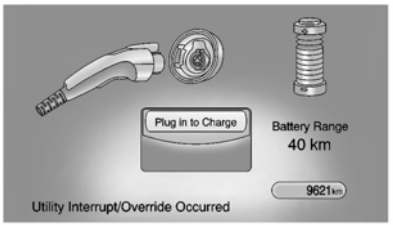
When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster

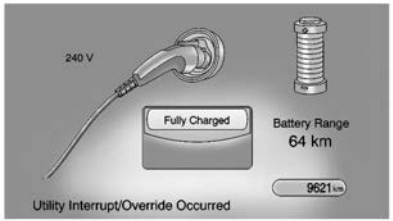
The instrument cluster displays a preview of information that includes electric range, charging, odometer, and battery status. This happens upon entry when the driver door is opened, and following the welcome animation, before starting the vehicle.

A CHARGING OVERRIDE/ INTERRUPTION OCCURRED message may display on the lower left of the screen to indicate that a charging override or interruption has occurred due to unintended interruption of AC power at the vehicle's charge port.

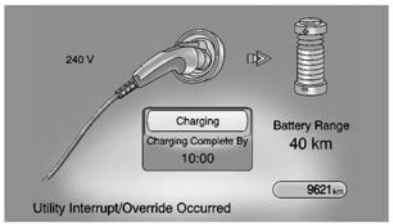
The following screens may appear, depending on the status.



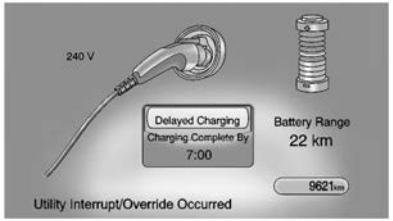
The previous screen indicates that the charge cord is not connected. Plug the charge cord in to charge the vehicle.



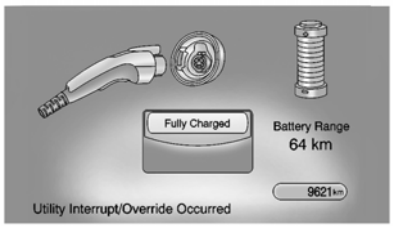
The previous screen indicates that the charge cord is connected and charging is complete.



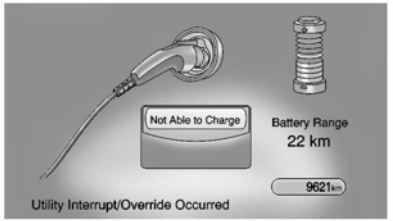
The previous screen indicates that charging is active and the estimated charge completion time is 10:00 a.m.



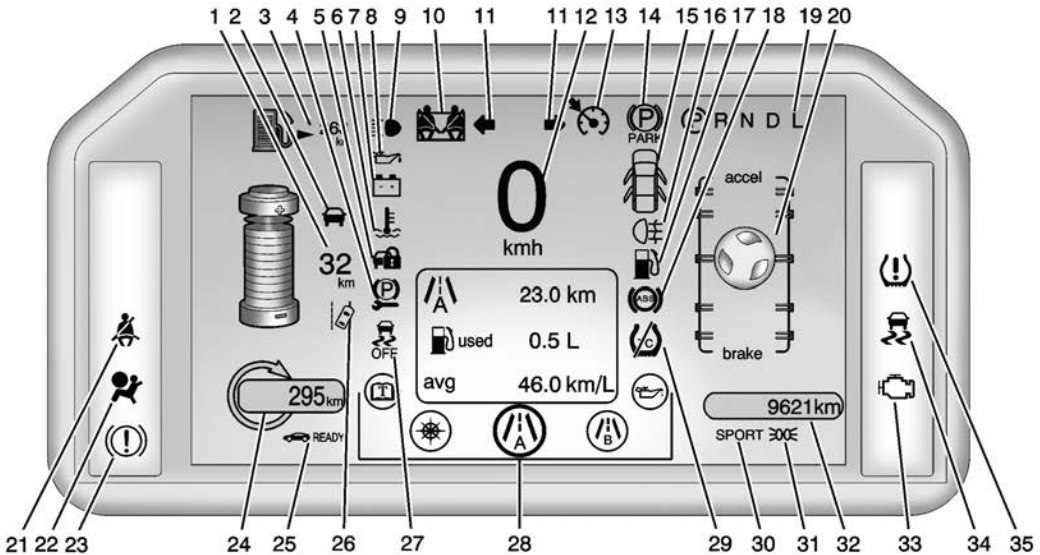
The previous screen indicates that charging is programmed to be delayed with an estimated completion time of 7:00 a.m.



The previous screen indicates that the vehicle is fully charged and the charge cord is not connected.



The previous screen indicates that the charge cord is connected, but the vehicle cannot be charged.



Complete Cluster with Enhanced Configuration in Electric Mode

1. *Battery Gauge on page 5-11*.
2. *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) Warning Light on page 5-18*.
3. *Fuel Gauge on page 5-11*.
4. *Service Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-17*.
5. *Security Light on page 5-21*.
6. *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 5-20*.
7. *Charging System Light (12-Volt Battery) on page 5-14*.
8. *Engine oil pressure on page 5-20*.
9. *High Beam on page 5-22*.
10. Second Row Passenger Seat belt Reminder Light. See *Seat Belt Reminders on page 5-12*.
11. *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-4*.
12. *Speedometer on page 5-10*.
13. *Cruise control on page 5-22*.
14. *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-16*.
15. *Door, Bonnet, or Hatch Open Light on page 5-22*.
16. *Rear fog light on page 5-22*
17. *Low fuel on page 5-21*.
18. *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 5-17*.
19. Electric Drive Unit Positions. See *Electric Drive Unit on page 9-22*.
20. *Driver Efficiency Gauge on page 5-11*.
21. Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light. See *Seat Belt Reminders on page 5-12*.
22. *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13*.
23. *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-16*.
24. *Total Vehicle Range on page 5-12*.
25. *Vehicle Ready Light on page 5-21*.
26. *Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light on page 5-18*.
27. *StabiliTrak® OFF Light on page 5-19*.
28. *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37*.
29. *Traction Off Light on page 5-19*.
30. *Sport Mode Light on page 5-18* and *Hold Mode Light on page 5-18*.
31. *Lamps On Reminder on page 5-22*.
32. *Odometer on page 5-10*.
33. *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-14*.
34. *Traction Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak® Light on page 5-19*.
35. *Tyre Pressure Light on page 5-20*.

Instrument Cluster Display Configurations

There are two instrument cluster display configurations to choose from. Press CONFIG next to the steering wheel to change the configuration. See the *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37* for more information.

Choose either the Simple or Enhanced Configuration display.



Simple Configuration in Electric Mode

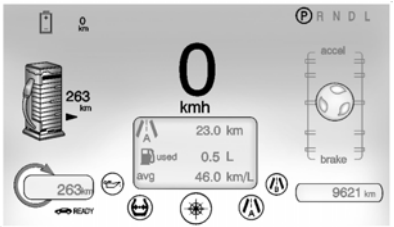


Simple Configuration in Extended Range Mode

The Enhanced Configuration displays the Driver Efficiency Gauge.



Enhanced Configuration in Electric Mode



Enhanced Configuration in Extended Range Mode

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in kilometres.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer is within the Driver Information Centre. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37* for more information.

Battery Gauge



This indicator displays the high voltage battery charge level.

When this indicator is displayed in the foreground, the vehicle is operating in Electric Mode. The number next to the indicator displays an estimate of how far the vehicle can be driven while in this mode.

See *Electric Mode on page 9-16*.

Fuel Gauge

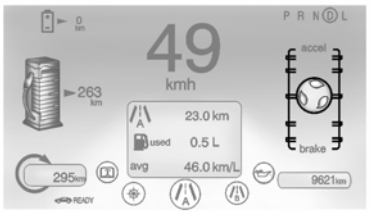


This indicator displays the fuel level. When this indicator is in the foreground, the vehicle is operating in Extended Range Mode.

The number next to the indicator displays an estimate of how far the vehicle can be driven while in this mode.

See *Extended Range Mode on page 9-17*.

Driver Efficiency Gauge



This gauge is a guide to driving in an efficient manner by keeping the ball green and in the centre of the gauge. The leaves stop spinning when the vehicle stops or when the ball travels away from the centre of the gauge.

See *Driving for Better Energy Efficiency on page 9-2*.

accel: If the ball turns yellow and travels above the centre of the gauge, acceleration is too aggressive to optimise efficiency.

brake: If the ball turns yellow and travels below the centre of the gauge, braking is too aggressive to optimise efficiency.

Total Vehicle Range



Total vehicle range is the remaining distance the vehicle can be driven when combining the electric range and fuel range.

See *Driving for Better Energy Efficiency on page 9-2*.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on until the belt is buckled. This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light

and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Second Row Passenger Seat belt Reminder Light



Second row seating positions monitored for seat belt use are represented by a coloured symbol indicating seat belt status.

When the vehicle is started, two seat belt symbols come on and stay on for several seconds in the instrument cluster to alert the driver that passengers may need to fasten their seat belts. After the passenger seat belt is buckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol in the instrument cluster turns green.

If a seat belt is not initially buckled, the instrument cluster displays a grey seat belt symbol.

While the vehicle is moving, if a second row passenger who was previously buckled becomes unbuckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol will change to flashing red and a chime may sound.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 3-15*.



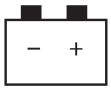
The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Centre (DIC) message may also come on. See *Airbag System Messages on page 5-45*.

Charging System Light (12-Volt Battery)



The charging system light comes on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN, as a check to show the light is working.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the 12-volt battery.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the vehicle. It ensures that emissions are at acceptable levels, helping to maintain a clean environment. The malfunction indicator lamp comes on when the vehicle is placed in Service Only Mode, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Power Button on page 9-11* for more information.



If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on, while the engine is in ON/RUN, this indicates that the OBD II system has detected a problem and diagnosis and service might be required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system also assists the dealer technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

⚠ Caution

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

⚠ Caution

Modifications made to the engine, electric drive unit, exhaust, intake or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tyres with other than those of the same Tyre Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill gradients.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to stop and park the vehicle. Turn the vehicle off and wait at least 10 seconds before driving the vehicle again. If the light begins to flash again, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following may correct an emission control system malfunction:

- Check that the fuel cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- Check that good quality fuel is used. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and may cause stalling after start-up or misfiring. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

  If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It may require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. The dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on, there is a brake system problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light



This status light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light flashes and stays on after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25* for more information.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light



The service electric parking brake light should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If this light stays on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25*. If a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), see *Brake System Messages on page 5-40*.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This light should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the ABS warning light stays on longer than a few seconds after the vehicle is in ON/RUN, or comes on and stays on while driving, try resetting the system. To reset the system:

1. While driving, pull over when it is safe to do so.
2. Place the vehicle in P (Park).
3. Turn the vehicle off.
4. Restart the vehicle.

If the ABS warning light remains on after resetting the system or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the ABS warning light is on, but the regular brake system warning light is not on, the antilock brakes are not working properly, but the regular brakes are still functioning. Have the vehicle serviced right away. If both brake lights are on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes, and there is a problem with the regular brakes as well. Have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-63*.

Sport Mode Light

SPORT

This light comes on when Sport Mode is selected. See "Sport Mode" in *Driver Mode on page 9-17* for more information.

Hold Mode Light

HOLD

This light comes on when Hold Mode is selected. See "Hold Mode" in *Driver Mode on page 9-17* for more information.

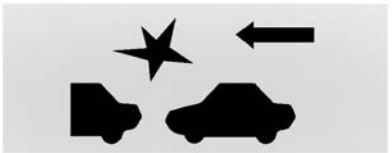
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light



This light comes on green when the system is on and ready to operate. When the system determines that the vehicle is leaving its lane without using the turn signal in that direction, this light will change to amber and flash.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW) on page 9-39*.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) Warning Light



The forward collision alert comes on and warns when a vehicle is being rapidly approached.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-32* for more information.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator



This light displays green when a vehicle is detected ahead.

This light will display amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-32*.

Traction Off Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing and releasing the TCS/ESC button.

This light and the StabiliTrak OFF light come on when StabiliTrak is turned off.

If the TCS is off, wheel spin is not limited. Adjust driving accordingly.

StabiliTrak® OFF Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak system is turned off. If StabiliTrak is off, Traction Control System (TCS) is also off.

If the TCS is off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the StabiliTrak systems and the warning light turns off.

Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, there could be a problem with the TCS/StabiliTrak system and the vehicle might need service. When this warning light is on, the TCS/StabiliTrak system is off and does not limit wheel spin.

The light flashes if the system is active and is working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on briefly when the vehicle is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, the vehicle may have a problem with the cooling system. Stop and turn off the vehicle to avoid damage to the engine.
A warning chime sounds when this light is on.

See *Engine Overheating on page 10-18* for more information.

Tyre Pressure Light



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. It provides information about tyre pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tyres are significantly underinflated.

A message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) may also display. See *Tyre Messages on page 5-47*. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tyres to the pressure value shown on the tyre placard. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*.

When the Light Flashes First and Then is On Steady

This indicates that there may be a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System. The light flashes for about one minute and stays on steady until the vehicle is in OFF. This sequence repeats each time the vehicle is in ON/RUN. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-40*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

⚠ Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.



The oil pressure light should come on briefly as the vehicle is started. If it does not come on have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light



The low fuel warning light comes on briefly when the vehicle is started.

This light also comes on when the fuel level is low. When fuel is added, the light should go off. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

Security Light



The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobiliser Operation on page 2-14*.

Vehicle Ready Light



The vehicle ready light comes on whenever the vehicle is ready to be driven.

High-Beam On Light



The high-beam on light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-1* for more information.

Rear Fog Light



The rear fog lamp light comes on when they are in use.

For more information see *Rear Fog Lights on page 6-4*.

Lamps On Reminder



This light comes on when the park lamps, headlamps, or taillamps are on.

Cruise Control Light

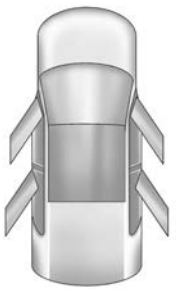


The cruise control light comes on when the cruise control is turned on and turns green when cruise control is engaged.

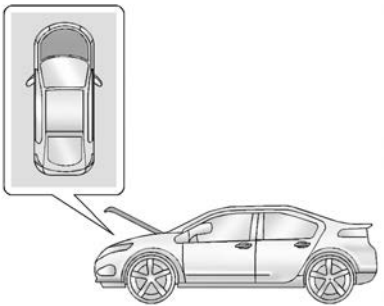
See *Cruise Control on page 9-30* for more information.

Door, Bonnet, or Hatch Open Light

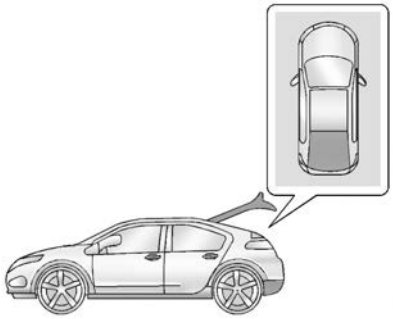
If a door, bonnet or hatch is not completely closed, a graphic is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



Door(s) Open



Bonnet Open



Hatch Open

The DIC indicates when a door, the bonnet or the hatch is open. The DIC displays the open area as shaded.

Information Displays

Centre Stack Display

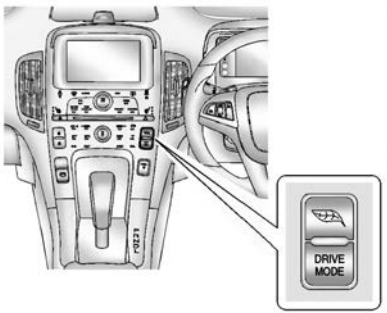
The centre stack screen displays Charging, Power Flow, and Energy Information. See the information that follows.

Climate Control, Infotainment, and Vehicle Personalisation information also displays in this screen. For more information on these systems, see:

- *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.
- Infotainment. See *Overview on page 7-1*.
- *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

The centre stack controls only need a light touch to operate and work best with bare hands. The controls will work with most gloves although they may take longer to respond.

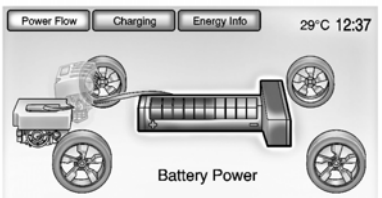
Use the finger pad rather than the finger tip to minimise response time. If the controls are not responding, remove the gloves.



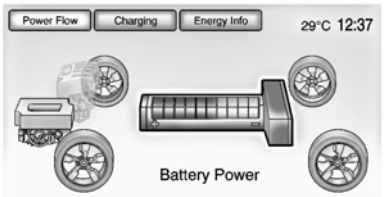
To view the Power Flow, Charging, and Energy Information, press the button on the centre stack.

Power Flows

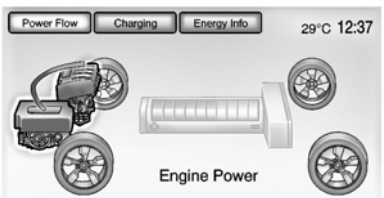
To view the Power Flow screens, press the button on the centre stack and then press the Power Flow button at the top of the touch screen. The Power Flow screens indicate the current system operating condition. The screens show the energy flow between the engine, electric drive unit, and high voltage battery. These components will be highlighted when they are active.



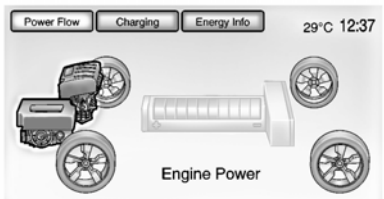
Battery Power - Battery is active with energy flowing to the wheels.



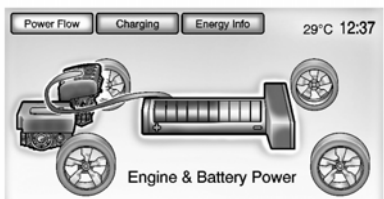
Battery Power - Vehicle is stationary in electric mode and no power is flowing to the wheels.



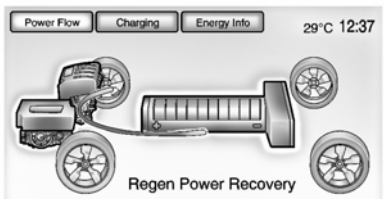
Engine Power - Engine is active with energy flowing to the wheels.



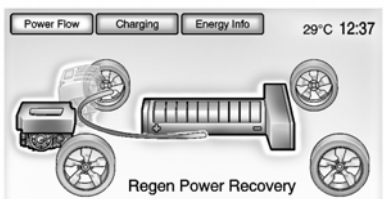
Engine Power - Vehicle is stationary in extended range mode and no power is flowing to the wheels.



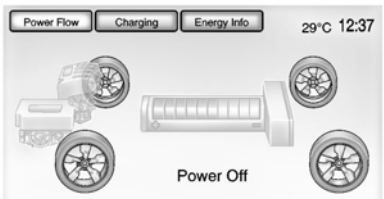
Engine and Battery Power - Both the engine and battery are active with energy flowing to the wheels.



Regen Power Recovery - Engine is active. Power from the wheels returns to the battery during regenerative braking or coasting.



Regen Power Recovery - Power from the wheels returns to the battery during regenerative braking or coasting.



Power Off - No power is flowing to the wheels.

Charging

Important Information About Portable Electric Vehicle Charging

- Charging an electric vehicle can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug in to any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions, and protection devices) for heavy-duty service at a 10 amp continuous load.

- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over time, making them unsuitable for electric vehicle charging.
- Check the electrical outlet/plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet/plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.
- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weather-proof while in use.
- Mount the charging cord to reduce strain on the electrical outlet/plug.

⚠ Warning

Improper use of portable electric vehicle charge cords may cause a fire, electrical shock, or burns, and may result in damage to property, serious injury, or death.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not use extension cords, multi-outlet power strips, splitters, grounding adaptors, surge protectors, or similar devices.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is worn or damaged, or one that will not hold the plug firmly in place.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is not properly grounded.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is on a circuit with other electrical loads.

See the charge cord user guide.

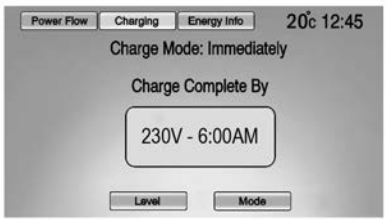
Charge Modes

This vehicle has three programmable charge modes. To view the current charge mode status in the centre stack display, press the button on the centre stack and then press the Charging button at the top of the touch screen.

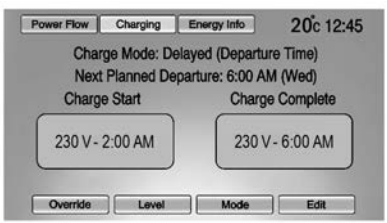
The current charge mode status can also be viewed in a temporary pop-up in the centre stack display by pressing the charge port door release button on the driver door.

The Charge Start and Charge Complete time estimations are also displayed on the screen. These estimations are most accurate when the vehicle is plugged in and in moderate temperature conditions. Also, the vehicle uses the clock displayed in the centre stack for programmable charging, so please ensure that the time displayed in the upper right-hand corner of the centre stack reflects the desired time of day.

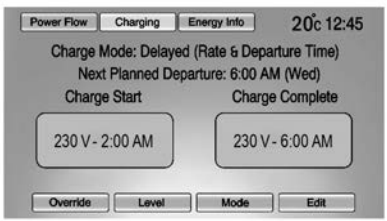
Charge Mode Status



Immediately: The vehicle starts charging as soon as it is connected to an electrical outlet. See *Plug-In Charging on page 9-41*.



Delayed Departure Time: The vehicle estimates the charging start time considering the programmed departure time for the current day of the week. Charging begins at the start time and is complete by the departure time only if sufficient time is allowed after the charge cord is plugged in.



Delayed Rate and Departure Time:

⚠ Caution

This feature is dependent on utility company support, if available.

The vehicle estimates the charging start time based on the utility rate schedule, utility rate preference, and the programmed departure time for the current day of the week. The vehicle will charge during the least expensive rate periods to achieve a full battery charge by the departure time. Electrical rate information from the utility company for the charging location is required for this mode.

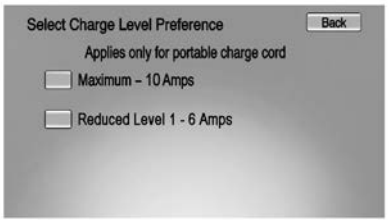
Also, if the selected electric rate settings result in a very long charge completion time, the vehicle will start charging immediately upon plug-in. For example, if the electric rate table is set up with all “Peak” rates and the rate preference is to charge during “Off-Peak” rates only, then the vehicle will start charging immediately upon plug-in.

Charge Level Selection

⚠ Warning

Using a charge level that exceeds the electrical circuit or electrical outlet capacity may start a fire or damage the electrical circuit. Use the lowest charge level until a qualified electrician inspects your electrical circuit capacity. Use the lowest charge level if the electrical circuit or electrical outlet capacity is not known.

The Charge Level Preference setting allows the vehicle's charge level to be selected, so it matches the capability of the charging location. The Charge Level Preference Setting will only limit charging when a portable charge cord is used. This feature has no impact on charging when a charging station is used. If the vehicle consistently stops charging after plugging in, or if a circuit breaker continues to trip, reducing to a lower Charge Level Preference may resolve the issue.



The Charge Level Preference should be configured to match the electrical current rating for the AC outlet that the charge cord is connected to. The Charge Level Preference settings are:

- Maximum: Limits AC current to 10 Amps
- Reduced Level 1: Limits AC current to 6 Amps

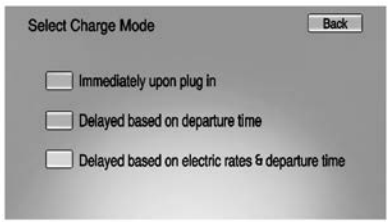
Exact current levels for a particular region may vary from values shown in this manual. Please check vehicle for available levels.

For some vehicles, the Charge Level Preference must be updated prior to the vehicle being charged and the Charge Level Preference will reset to a default value when the vehicle is shifted from P (Park).

The Charge Level Preference setting can be changed at any time while the centre stack display is operable.

Charge Mode Selection

From the Charge Mode Status screen, press Mode.



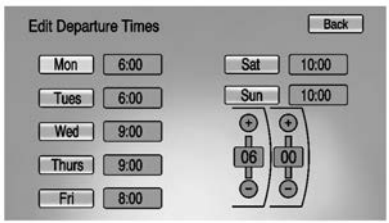
Select one option:

- Immediately upon plug in.

- Delayed based on departure time.
- Delayed based on electric rates & departure time.

Departure Time Entry

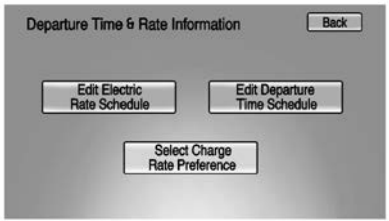
From the Delayed Charge Mode Status screen, press Edit to change the departure time for each day of the week to match your personal schedule.



1. Press the day to change.
2. Press + or − to change the hours and minutes.
3. Press Back to store changes and return to the previous screen.

Charge Rate Selection

From the Delayed Rate and Departure Time Charge Mode Status screen, press Edit.



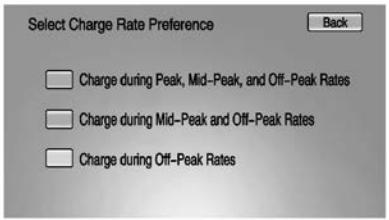
Select one of the following:

- Edit Electric Rate Schedule.
- Edit Departure Time Schedule. See “Departure Time Entry.”
- Select Charge Rate Preference.

Charge Rate Preference Selection

> **⚠ Caution**
>
> This feature is dependent on utility company support, if available.

From the Departure Time & Rate Information screen, press Select Charge Rate Preference.



Press one of the following options to select the Charge Rate Preference:

- Charge during Peak, Mid-Peak, and Off-Peak Rates: The vehicle can charge during any rate period to satisfy the next planned departure time. However, it will select when to charge to minimise the total cost of the charge.
- Charge during Mid-Peak and Off-Peak Rates: The vehicle will charge during Off-Peak and/or Mid-Peak rate periods only and

will select when to charge to minimise the total cost of the charge.

- Charge during Off-Peak Rates: The vehicle will only charge during Off-Peak rate periods.

Charging begins at the start time and is complete by the departure time only if sufficient time is allowed after the charge cord is plugged in. For example, if the vehicle is plugged in for only one hour prior to the departure time, and the battery is completely discharged, the vehicle will not be fully charged by the departure time regardless of the rate selection.

Also, if the selected electric rate settings result in a very long charge completion time, the vehicle will start charging immediately upon plug-in. For example, if the electric rate table is set up with all “Peak” rates and the rate preference is to charge during “Off-Peak” rates only, then the vehicle will start charging immediately upon plug-in.

Electric Rate Plan Selection

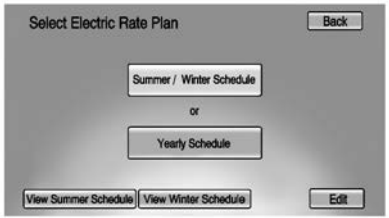
⚠ Caution

This feature is dependent on utility company support, if available.

Electric rates, or cost per unit, may vary based on time, weekday/weekend, and season. During the day when the demand for electricity is high, the rates are usually higher and called Peak rates. At night when the demand for electricity is low, the rates are usually lower and called Off-Peak rates. In some areas, a Mid-Peak rate is offered.

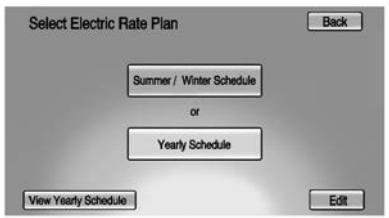
Contact the utility company to obtain the rate schedule for your area. The summer and winter start dates must be established to use a summer/winter schedule.

From the Departure Time & Rate Information screen, press Edit Electric Rate Schedule.



To edit the Summer/Winter Schedule:

1. Press Summer/Winter Schedule.
2. Press Edit.

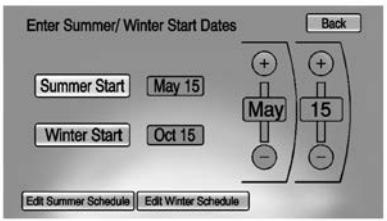


To edit the Yearly Schedule:

1. Press Yearly Schedule.
2. Press Edit.

Summer/Winter Schedule Start Date Entering

From the Select Electric Rate Plan screen, press Summer/Winter Schedule then press Edit.

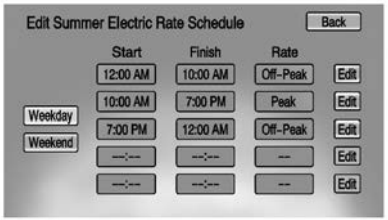


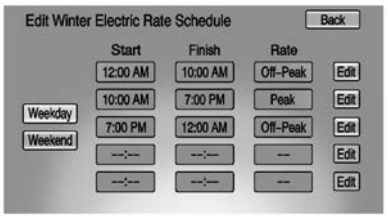
1. Press Summer Start.
2. Press + or − to set the month and day for the start of summer.
3. Press Winter Start.
4. Press + or − to set the month and day for the start of winter.
5. Press Edit Summer Schedule or Edit Winter Schedule to edit the daily electric rate schedule.

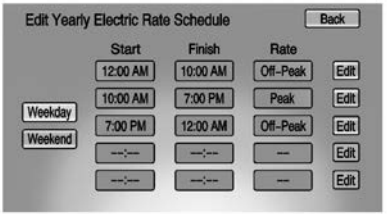
Electric Rate Schedule Editing

From the Enter Summer/Winter Start Dates screen, press Edit Summer Schedule or Edit Winter Schedule.

From the Select Electric Rate Plan screen, press Yearly Schedule and then press Edit.







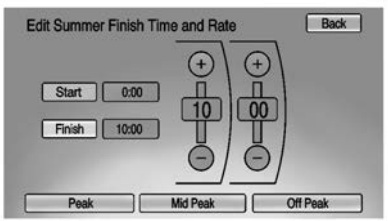
1. Press Weekday or Weekend.
2. Press Edit next to the row to be changed.
   - Weekdays are Monday through Friday and use the same rate schedule.
   - Weekends are Saturday and Sunday and use the same rate schedule.

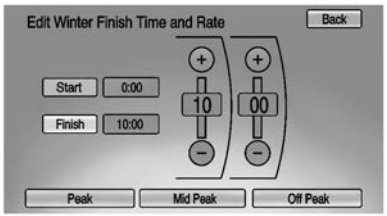
Both weekday and weekend schedules must be set. The rate schedule only applies for a 24-hour period, starting at 0:00 and ending at 0:00. There can be five rate changes for each day; not all must be used.

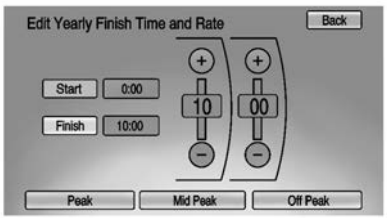
The finish times must be consecutive. If a finish time does not follow a start time, the error message displays “An invalid entry was found in the data entered. Please re-enter data.”

Electric Rate Finish Time Editing

From the Edit (Summer, Winter, or Yearly) Electric Rate Schedule screen, press Edit next to the row to change.





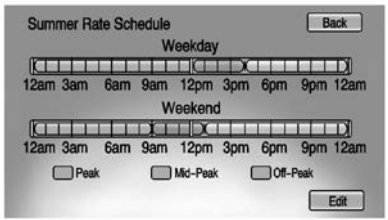


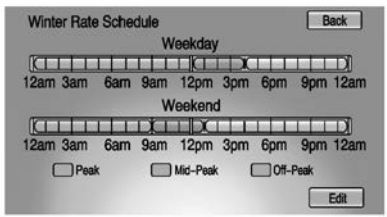
1. Press + or − to adjust the time.
2. Press Peak, Mid-Peak, or Off-Peak to select the electric rate.
3. Press the Back button to store changes.

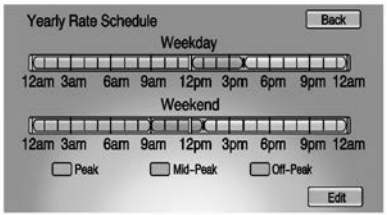
Only the finish time can be edited. The start time is automatically populated in the rate table.

Electric Rate Schedule Viewing

From the Select Electric Rate Plan screen, press View (Summer, Winter, or Yearly) Schedule.







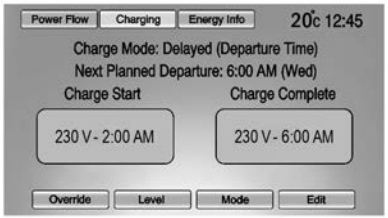
Temporary Charge Mode Override and Cancel

Programmed Delayed Charge Modes can be temporarily overridden to an Immediate Charge Mode for one charge cycle. Also, the next planned departure time can be temporarily overridden for one charge cycle. In addition to the in-vehicle overrides via the centre stack, there are other ways to temporarily override a Delayed Charge Mode. See *Plug-In Charging on page 9-41*.

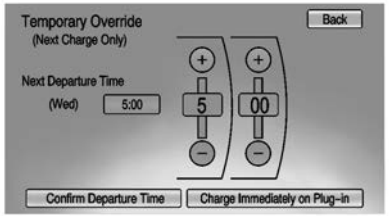
Temporary Override of a Delayed Charge Mode

To temporarily override a Delayed Charge Mode to Immediate Charge Mode from inside the vehicle:

1. Press the Override button on the main charging screen.

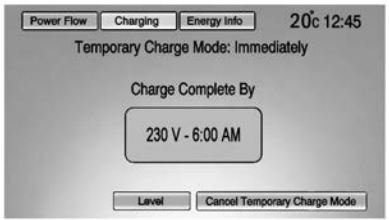


2. Press Override.



3. Press Charge Immediately on Plug-In to temporarily override to an Immediate Charge Mode.

The Temporary Charge Mode Status screen will automatically display the revised charge complete time.



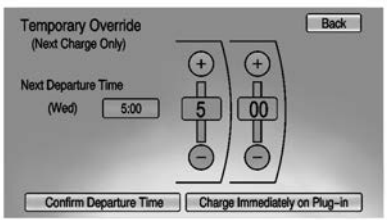
To cancel the temporary override to Immediate, from the Temporary Charge Mode Status screen or

pop-up, press Cancel Temporary Charge Mode on the bottom of the touch screen.

Temporary Override of the Next Planned Departure Time

To temporarily override the Next Planned Departure Time from inside the vehicle:

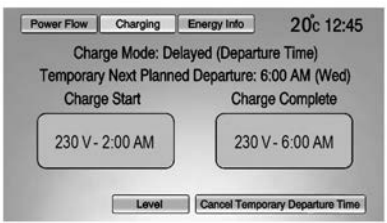
1. Press the Override button on the main charging screen.
2. Press Override.



3. Press the + or – button to change the Next Departure Time.
4. Press Confirm Departure Time to temporarily override the Next Planned Departure Time.

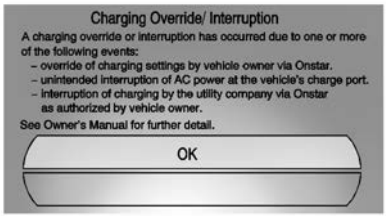
The Temporary Charge Mode Status screen will automatically display the revised charge complete time.

The Temporary Departure Time can only be updated for the same day as the original Next Planned Departure Time. Also, the vehicle will not accept a Temporary Departure Time that is before the present time of day.



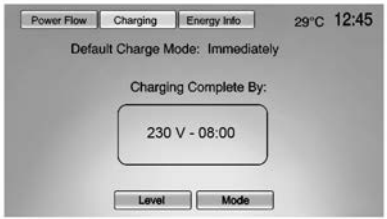
To cancel the temporary override of the Next Planned Departure Time, from the Temporary Charge Mode Status screen or pop-up, press Cancel Temporary Departure Time on the bottom of the touch screen.

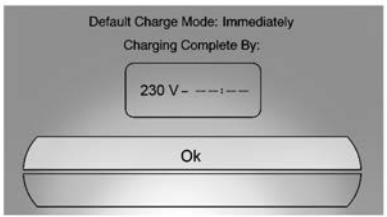
Charging Override/Interruption Pop-Up



The Charging Override/Interruption pop-up will appear if there was an unintended loss of AC power during the plug-in charge event. For example, there was a power outage or the charge cord was unplugged from the wall.

Programmable Charging Disabled



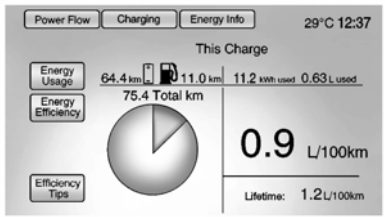


When the Programmable Charging system is disabled, the Default Charge Mode Status screen and the pop-up will display "- -:- -" for the Charge Complete Time. The Programmable Charging system will be disabled if the Charge Complete Time cannot be confidently estimated. If the Programmable Charging system is consistently disabled, see your dealer for details.

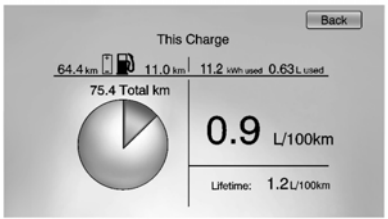
Energy Information

To view the Energy Usage, Energy Efficiency, and Efficiency Tips, press the button on the centre stack and then press the Energy Info button at the top of the touch screen.

Energy Usage

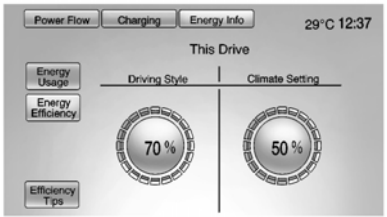


The Energy Usage screen displays information for the total of all drive cycles since the last time the high voltage battery was fully charged. This includes distance travelled in Electric Mode, distance travelled in Extended Range Mode, total distance travelled, electric energy used from the battery, total fuel used, and average fuel economy. There are maximum limits to some of the values that can be displayed. When these values are replaced with dashes, the value limits have been reached. To reset these values, the high voltage battery will need to be fully recharged. The circle graph also represents the percentage of distance travelled using Electric Mode versus Extended Range Mode. The Lifetime Fuel Economy is a total over the life of the vehicle and can only be reset by the dealer.



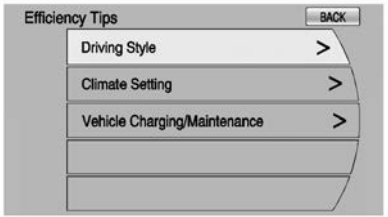
The Energy Usage information will also appear automatically on power off when Retained Accessory Power is active. This automatic pop-up can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See “Energy Summary Exit Pop-up” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Energy Efficiency



The Energy Efficiency screen is accessed by pressing Energy Efficiency on the Energy Usage screen. This screen displays the energy efficiency over the drive cycle based on driving style and climate settings. Driving in a more efficient manner will result in a higher percentage displayed for driving style. Minimising the use of the climate control system will result in a higher percentage displayed for climate setting.

Efficiency Tips



The Efficiency Tips screen is accessed by pressing Efficiency Tips from the Energy Usage or Energy Efficiency screen. This screen provides a guide on how to improve energy usage to increase fuel economy and range.

Clock

Setting the Clock

To set the time:

1. Press CONFIG to enter the menu options.

2. Select Time and Date to display the Time and Date setting screen.

   Set Time: Press the hours and minutes, + or − to increase or decrease the hours and minutes displayed on the clock. Press Back to exit.

   Set Date: Press the date, + or – to adjust the year, month and day. Press Back to exit.

   12 hr/24 hr Format: Press the 12 Hour screen button for standard time; press the 24 Hour screen button for 24 hour format. Press Back to exit.

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

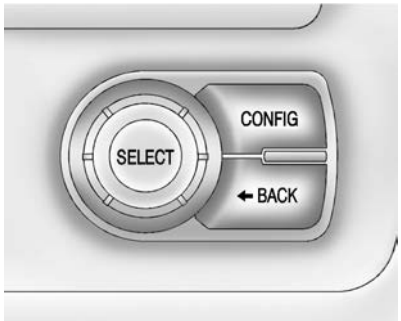


The Driver Information Centre (DIC) display is in the instrument cluster. The DIC displays information about the vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-39* for more information.

DIC Operation and Displays

View the DIC displays by pressing the DIC buttons located next to the steering wheel. The DIC displays trip, fuel, and warning messages if a system problem is detected.

DIC Controls



CONFIG: Press to select either the Simple or Enhanced instrument cluster configuration display.

BACK: Press to return to the previous screen, exit a screen, or return to the main menu.

Press BACK to minimise the DIC menu display.

SELECT: Press the centre of the knob to select the highlighted item. Turn the knob to scroll through the menu items.

DIC Menu Items

At the main DIC menu:

1. Turn the SELECT knob to scroll through the possible DIC menus.
2. Press the centre of the SELECT knob when a menu item is highlighted to enter that menu.
3. Continue to turn and press the SELECT knob to scroll through and select the available menu items:

: Trip A
: Trip B
: Oil Life
: Tyre Pressure
: Vehicle Messages
: Units
: Tutorial Mode
: Power Gauge
: Following Distance Indication

Trip A and Trip B

The trip displays show fuel used, average fuel economy, and distance travelled since the last trip reset.

Reset the trip data by pressing and holding the SELECT button when either Trip A or Trip B is displayed.

Oil Life

This displays the percentage of remaining oil life. The lower the percentage, the closer the vehicle is to needing an oil change.

When the oil life is depleted, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays. Change the oil as soon as possible. Additional maintenance is also recommended in the maintenance schedule. See the Service/Warranty Booklet and *Engine Oil on page 10-8*.

The oil life must be reset after each oil change. Avoid accidental resetting of the Engine Oil Life System. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

To reset the Engine Oil Life System, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-11*. The system is reset when 100% displays.

Tyre Pressure

The display will show a vehicle with the approximate pressures of all four tyres. Tyre pressure is displayed in kilopascals (kPa).

If a low tyre pressure is detected, a message is displayed advising to check the tyre pressure in the specified tyre. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38* and *Tyre Messages on page 5-47* for more information.

If the tyre pressure display shows dashes instead of a value, there may be a problem with the vehicle. See your dealer for service.

Vehicle Messages

Turn the SELECT knob to scroll through any active warning messages. Press SELECT to review the messages.

Units

This display shows the vehicle is set to metric measurements.

Tutorial Mode

Select this menu item to view a screen that explains some of the unique features of the cluster or the Open Source Software information for the cluster.

Tutorial mode is only available when the vehicle is in P (Park).

Power Gauge

Select this menu item to display the power gauge.

The power gauge is a gauge that informs the driver of the total power coming from the engine or battery to operate the vehicle.

Following Distance Indication

Select this menu item to view the following distance indication. See "Following Distance Indication" under *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-32*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed in the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may display one after the other.

Messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing the SELECT knob. The messages requiring immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed. All messages should be taken seriously. Clearing the messages does not correct the problem.

Battery and Charging Messages

BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the vehicle has detected that the 12-volt battery voltage has dropped and vehicle features are being disabled. The 12-volt battery saver system starts reducing certain features trying to save the charge of the 12-volt battery. Turn off unnecessary features to allow the battery to recharge.

BATTERY TOO COLD, PLUG IN TO WARM

This message displays during extremely cold temperatures, when the vehicle will not start until the high voltage battery is warm enough.

Plug the vehicle in and make sure the vehicle is off to allow the charging system to warm the high voltage battery, then the vehicle can be started.

CHARGE CABLE CONNECTED

This message displays when the charge cord is connected to the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be shifted out of P (Park) with the charge cord connected.

CHARGE DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the charge door is open and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). The charge door should be kept fully closed when the vehicle is not charging.

LOW BATTERY

This message displays when the 12-volt battery voltage is low. See *Battery on page 10-21*.

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a fault in the 12-volt battery charging system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE HIGH VOLTAGE CHARGING SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the high voltage charging system. See your dealer for service.

Brake System Messages

BRAKE FLUID LOW

This message displays when the brake fluid level is low. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-20*.

RELEASE PARKING BRAKE

This message displays if the electric parking brake is on while the vehicle is in motion. Release it before attempting to drive. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25*.

SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST

This message displays when there is a problem with the brake boost system. When this message displays, the brake pedal may be harder to push and the stopping distance may be longer. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE PARKING BRAKE

This message displays when there is a problem with the parking brake. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

STEP ON BRAKE TO RELEASE PARK BRAKE

This message displays when attempting to release the electric parking brake without the brake pedal applied. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25*.

Cruise Control Messages

CRUISE SET TO XXX

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to. See *Cruise Control on page 9-30*.

Door open messages

DOOR(S) OPEN, BONNET OPEN, HATCH OPEN

A symbol will appear on the display showing the area that is open. See *Door, Bonnet, or Hatch Open Light on page 5-22*.

Drive Mode Messages

HOLD MODE NOT AVAILABLE

This message displays when in Hold Mode and the mode becomes unavailable. See “Hold Mode” under *Driver Mode on page 9-17*.

SPORT MODE NOT AVAILABLE

This message displays when in Sport Mode and the mode becomes unavailable. See “Sport Mode” under *Driver Mode on page 9-17*.

Electric Drive Unit Messages

SHIFT TO PARK

This message displays when the vehicle should be shifted to P (Park). This may appear when attempting to turn off the vehicle when it is not in P (Park).

Engine Cooling System Messages

ENGINE OVERHEATED — REDUCE SPEED

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature or engine oil is too hot. Reduce speed and allow the vehicle to cool down.

ENGINE OVERHEATED — TURN VEHICLE OFF

This message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

ENGINE RUNNING DUE TO TEMPERATURE

This message displays when the high voltage battery is charged but the engine has to come on because of the outside temperature or high voltage battery temperature.

Engine Oil Messages

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. After changing the engine oil, the Engine Oil Life System must be reset. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-11* and *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37* for information on how to reset the system. See *Engine Oil on page 10-8* and the Service/Warranty Booklet for more information.

OIL PRESSURE LOW — TURN VEHICLE OFF

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

Fuel System Messages

CLOSE FUEL DOOR

This message displays when the fuel door is open and the vehicle is moving.

ENGINE NOT AVAILABLE ADD FUEL

This message displays when the engine is not available due to running out of fuel. The vehicle can continue to be driven in Electric Mode until the battery is depleted, but will have less responsive acceleration. When this message is displayed, refuel the vehicle. See *Out of Fuel/Engine Unavailable on page 9-19*.

FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays when the vehicle is low on fuel. Refuel as soon as possible.

READY TO REFUEL

This message displays when the fuel system is depressurised and the vehicle can be refuelled.

TIGHTEN PETROL CAP

This message displays when the fuel cap is not on tight. Tighten the fuel cap.

WAIT TO REFUEL

This message displays when the fuel system is pressurised and you must to wait to refuel the vehicle.

Key and Lock Messages

When programming new Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters, DIC messages display. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

NO REMOTE DETECTED

This message displays when the RKE transmitter is not detected while attempting to start the vehicle. The transmitter battery may be weak. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

NO REMOTE DETECTED, PRESS BRAKE TO RESTART

This message displays if the RKE transmitter is no longer detected in the vehicle. Press the brake pedal and the POWER ⏻ button to restart the vehicle, or press the POWER ⏻ button without pressing the brake pedal to turn the vehicle off. If the

vehicle is turned off and a valid transmitter is not available, the vehicle will not restart.

REMINDER: REMOTE LEFT IN VEHICLE

This message displays when leaving the vehicle when the RKE transmitter is still inside.

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the RKE transmitter needs to be replaced.

SERVICE KEYLESS START SYSTEM

This message displays when the keyless start system needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

USE TRANSMITTER POCKET TO START

This message displays when trying to start the vehicle if an RKE transmitter is not detected. The transmitter battery may be weak. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

Lamp Messages

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON/OFF

A message will display when the automatic light control has been turned on or off.

CHECK LAMP or LAMP FAILURE

Depending on the lamp, one of these messages may display. See *Bulb Replacement on page 10-25*.

INDICATOR ON

This message displays if the turn signal has been left on. Turn off the turn signal.

Object Detection System Messages

FORWARD COLLISION ALERT OFF

This message may display if the FCA system cannot activate due to a temporary condition. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-32*.

FRONT CAMERA BLOCKED, CLEAN WINDSCREEN

This message displays when the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Forward Collision Alert (FCA) systems are disabled because the camera view is blocked and cannot operate properly. It may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray. To clean the system, clean the outside of the windscreen area in front of the LDW/FCA camera sensor.

LANE DEPARTURE SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE

This message may display if the LDW system cannot activate due to a temporary condition. See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW) on page 9-39* for more information.

PARK ASSIST OFF

This message displays when the parking assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-34*.

SERVICE FRONT CAMERA

This message displays when the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Forward Collision Alert (FCA) systems are disabled and need service. See your dealer.

SERVICE PARKING ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the parking assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-34* for more information.

Propulsion Power Messages

PROPULSION POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the propulsion power is reduced and can affect the ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. If this message stays on when the malfunction indicator lamp is on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

This message can display when driving in mountainous terrain. This is normal operation to protect the high voltage battery. Only if both the PROPULSION POWER IS REDUCED message and the malfunction indicator lamp are on should the vehicle be taken to the dealer for service.

While climbing the grade with this message displayed, the vehicle speed may be reduced until the engine can recover the battery state of charge to a normal level.

Ride Control System Messages

LOW TRACTION

This message displays when the Antilock Brake System (ABS) is active and is working to assist the driver with control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

SERVICE STABILITRAK

This message displays when there is a problem detected with the StabiliTrak system. The vehicle is safe to drive, but the StabiliTrak system is not operational. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-27* for information on resetting the system.

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

This message displays when there is a problem detected with the Traction Control System (TCS). The vehicle is safe to drive, but the TCS is not operational. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-27* for information on resetting the system.

STABILITRAK OFF

This message displays when StabiliTrak is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly.

TRACTION CONTROL OFF

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly.

TRACTION CONTROL ON

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned on.

Airbag System Messages

SERVICE AIRBAG

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

Security Messages

SERVICE THEFT ALARM

This message displays if there is a problem with the alarm. See your dealer for service.

SERVICE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See your dealer for service.

Service Vehicle Messages

ENGINE MAINTENANCE XXX% COMPLETE

This message displays when the Engine Maintenance Mode is running. See “Engine Maintenance Mode” under *Maintenance Modes on page 9-19*.

ENGINE NOT AVAILABLE SERVICE SOON

This message displays when the engine is not available due to a malfunction that will not allow the engine to start. The vehicle can continue to be driven in Electric Mode until the battery is depleted, but will have reduced acceleration.

When this message is displayed, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible. See *Out of Fuel/Engine Unavailable on page 9-19*.

SERVICE AC SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the air conditioning system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE HEATER SOON

This message displays if there is a problem with the heater system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE POWER STEERING

This message displays if there is a problem with the power steering system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE STEERING COLUMN LOCK

This message displays if there is a problem with the steering column lock system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service. Depending on the severity of a crash, this message may come on along with the airbag readiness light.

STEERING COLUMN IS LOCKED

This message displays when the engine is running and the electric steering column is locked. Have the vehicle towed to your dealer for service.

Starting the Vehicle Messages

PRESS BRAKE TO START

This message displays when attempting to start the vehicle without first pressing the brake pedal.

PRESS BUTTON AGAIN TO TURN OFF

This message displays as a reminder to press the POWER ⏻ button to turn the vehicle off when an attempt is made to turn off the vehicle while it is in motion. See *Power Button on page 9-11*.

TURN STEERING WHEEL START VEHICLE AGAIN

This message displays when the steering column is locked. Try turning the steering wheel while starting the vehicle to unlock the steering column.

Tyre Messages

SERVICE TYRE MONITOR SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-40* for more information.

TYRE LEARNING ACTIVE

This message displays when the system is learning new tyres. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-40* for more information.

TYRE LOW ADD AIR TO TYRE

This message displays when the pressure in one or more of the tyres is low.

This message also displays LEFT FRONT, RIGHT FRONT, LEFT REAR, or RIGHT REAR to indicate the location of the low tyre.

The low tyre pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tyre Pressure Light on page 5-20*.

If a tyre pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Inflate the tyres by adding air until the tyre pressure is equal to the values shown on the tyre placard. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*.

You can receive more than one tyre pressure message at a time. The DIC also shows the tyre pressure values. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37*.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message is displayed when ice conditions are possible.

Vehicle Speed Messages

SPEED LIMITED TO XXX

This message displays when the vehicle speed is limited.

Vehicle Personalisation

The Vehicle Personalisation features can be accessed by using either the infotainment controls or the touch screen in the centre stack display. See *Overview on page 7-1*.

Using the Infotainment Controls

Use the CONFIG, TUNE/MENU knob, and ⬅ BACK buttons on the centre stack to select personalisation features.

CONFIG (Configure): Press to scroll through the available menus.

TUNE/MENU Knob

- Press to enter, select, or activate a highlighted menu option.
- Turn to highlight a menu option.
- Press to turn a system setting on or off.

BACK

- Press to exit a menu.
- Press to return to a previous screen.

Submenus

An arrow on the right-hand edge of the menu indicates that it has a submenu with other options.

Selecting a Menu Option

1. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to highlight the function.
2. Press the TUNE/MENU knob to select the highlighted option. A checkmark next to the option indicates the selected option.

Turning a Function On or Off

1. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to highlight the function.
2. Press the TUNE/MENU knob to turn the function on or off. A checkmark next to the function indicates that the function is on.

Using the Touch Screen

Use the touch screen icons and menus on the centre stack display to select personalisation features.

△ : Touch to scroll up.

▽ : Touch to scroll down.

Back: Touch Back in the upper left corner of the display to return to the previous menu.

Submenus

An arrow on the right-hand edge of the menu indicates that it has a submenu with other options.

Selecting a Menu Option

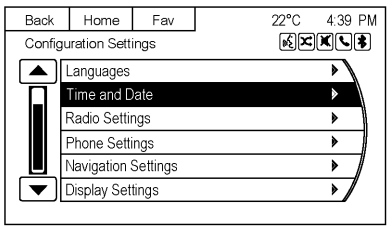
Touch any one of the available menu options on the touch screen to select the option. A checkmark next to the option indicates the selected option.

Turning a Function On or Off

Touch the screen where the available function is listed to turn it on or off. A checkmark next to the function indicates that the function is on.

Entering the Personalisation Menu

Press CONFIG. The Configuration Settings menu will display.



Vehicle Settings

Press the Vehicle Settings menu on the touch screen.

The Vehicle Settings menu features may include:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Comfort and Convenience
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Lock/Unlock/Start
- Return to Factory Settings

Climate and Air Quality

Select the Climate and Air Quality menu to display:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Auto Heated Seats
- Remote Start Auto Heated Seats
- Auto Demist
- Engine Assisted Heating
- Engine Assisted Heating (Plugged-In)

Auto Fan Speed

This feature sets the automatic fan speed to maintain the desired interior temperature. Choose a blower setting:

High: Increased speed.

Medium: Moderate speed.

Low: Reduced speed.

To select the auto fan speed:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Climate and Air Quality.
3. Select Auto Fan Speed.
4. Select the fan speed.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Auto Heated Seats

When enabled, the auto heated seat buttons on the touch screen will be highlighted. This feature will automatically activate heated seats at the level required by the interior temperature. The auto heated seats can be turned off by using the heated seat buttons on the centre stack.

To turn the auto heated seats on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Climate and Air Quality.
3. Turn the auto heated seats feature on or off.
4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Remote Start Auto Heated Seats

When on, this feature will turn the heated seats on when using remote start.

To turn the remote start auto heated seats on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Climate and Air Quality.
3. Turn the remote start auto heated seats feature on or off.

4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Auto Demist

When on and high humidity is detected, the climate control system will adjust the outside air, air conditioner, or heat to decrease fogging. The fan speed may increase. When high humidity is no longer detected, the system will return to previous operation.

To turn the auto demist on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Climate and Air Quality.
3. Turn the auto demist feature on or off.
4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Engine Assisted Heating

If equipped, this feature selects the outside temperature level at which the engine may run to assist heating in Electric Mode. A change in selection will not take effect until after the vehicle is first powered down.

The Engine Assisted Heating options are:

- At Cold Outside Temperatures, below approximately 2°C.
- At Very Cold Outside Temperatures, below approximately −10°C.

To select the outside temperature level at which the engine may run to assist heating in electric mode:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Climate and Air Quality.
3. Select Engine Assisted Heating.
4. Select the temperature level.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Engine Assisted Heating (Plugged-In)

If equipped, this feature turns on or off the ability for the engine to run to help heat the vehicle when it is plugged in. A change in setting will not take effect until after the vehicle is first powered down.

The Engine Assisted Heating (Plugged-In) options are:

- On
- Off

To turn the Engine Assisted Heating (Plugged-In) on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Climate and Air Quality.
3. Turn the Engine Assisted Heating (Plugged-In) feature on or off.
4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Comfort and Convenience

Select the Comfort and Convenience menu and the following will be displayed:

- Chime Volume
- Button Chime
- Energy Summary Exit Pop Up
- Charge Cord Theft Alert
- Charge Power Loss Alert

Chime Volume

This allows the selection of the chime volume level to be either normal or high.

To select the chime volume level:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Comfort and Convenience.
3. Select Chime Volume.
4. Select the volume level.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Button Chime

This allows a tone to be heard when a selection is made using the infotainment system.

To turn the button chime on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Comfort and Convenience.
3. Turn the button chime feature on or off.
4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Energy Summary Exit Pop Up

This allows the energy summary exit pop up to be turned on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Comfort and Convenience.
3. Turn the energy summary exit pop up feature on or off.
4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Charge Cord Theft Alert

This allows the charge cord theft alert to be turned on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Comfort and Convenience.
3. Turn the Charge Cord Theft Alert feature on or off.
4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Charge Power Loss Alert

This allows the charge power loss alert to be turned on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Comfort and Convenience.
3. Turn the Charge Power Loss Alert feature on or off.

4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Lighting

Select the Lighting menu and the following will be displayed:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting

Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle and it is dark outside.

The available options are:

- OFF
- 30 seconds
- 1 minute
- 2 minutes

To select the length of time the exterior lamps will remain on:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Lighting.
3. Select Exit Lighting.
4. Select the length of time the exterior lamps will remain on.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Vehicle Locator Lights

This allows the vehicle locator lights to be turned on or off. When on, the headlamps, park lamps, taillamps, number plate lamps, and reverse lamps will illuminate at night when is pressed on the RKE transmitter.

To turn the vehicle locator lights on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Lighting.
3. Select Vehicle Locator Lights.
4. Turn the vehicle locator lights on or off.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Power Door Locks

Select Power Door Locks and the following will be displayed:

- Auto Door Lock
- Open Door Anti Lock Out
- Delayed Door Lock

Auto Door Lock

When On, this feature will lock all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

The available options are:

- ON
- OFF

Open Door Anti Lock Out

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking until the door is closed. If this feature is turned on, the Delayed Door Lock menu will not be available.

To turn the Open Door Anti Lock Out feature on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.

2. Select Power Door Locks.
3. Select Open Door Anti Lock Out.
4. Turn the open door anti lock out feature on or off.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Delayed Door Lock

When on, this feature will delay the locking of the doors. To override the delay, press the power door lock switch on the centre stack.

To turn the delayed door lock feature on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Power Door Locks.
3. Select Delayed Door Lock.
4. Turn the delayed door lock feature on or off.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Remote Lock/Unlock/Start

Select Remote Lock, Unlock, Start and the following will be displayed:

- Remote Unlock Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

Remote Unlock Feedback

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

To turn the remote unlock light feedback feature on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Remote Lock/Unlock/ Start.
3. Select Remote Unlock Feedback.
4. Turn the remote unlock feedback feature on or off.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Remote Lock Feedback

This allows selection of what feedback is provided when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

The available options are:

- Lights and Horn
- Lights Only
- Horn Only
- OFF

To select the remote lock feedback:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Remote Lock/Unlock/ Start.
3. Select Remote Lock Feedback.
4. Select the remote feedback.

5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Remote Door Unlock

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing on the RKE transmitter.

The available options are:

- All Doors
- Driver Door

If All Doors is selected, all doors will be unlocked.

If Driver Door is selected, only the driver door will be unlocked on the first press of . All doors will be unlocked on the second press of within five seconds of the prior press.

To select how the doors will unlock with the RKE transmitter:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Remote Lock/Unlock/ Start.
3. Select Remote Door Unlock.
4. Select how the doors will unlock.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Passive Door Unlock

This allows selection of which doors are unlocked by pressing the button on the outside door handle.

The available options are:

- All Doors
- Driver Door

To select how the doors will unlock:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Remote Lock/Unlock/ Start.
3. Select Passive Door Unlock.
4. Select which doors to unlock.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Passive Door Lock

This allows passive locking to be turned on or off and select what type of feedback.

The available options are:

- Off
- On
- On with Horn Chirp

To select doors locking feedback:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Remote Lock/Unlock/ Start.
3. Select Passive Door Lock.
4. Select On, Off, or On with Horn Chirp.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

When on, the horn will chirp rapidly three times if an RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle.

To turn the remote left in vehicle reminder feature on or off:

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Remote Lock/Unlock/ Start.
3. Select Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder.
4. Turn the remote left in vehicle reminder feature on or off.
5. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

Return to Factory Settings

This returns all of the vehicle personalisation settings to the factory settings.

1. Press the Vehicle Settings menu.
2. Select Return to Factory Settings.
3. Select Yes or No.
4. Press Back to return to the previous menu.

✍ NOTES

Lighting

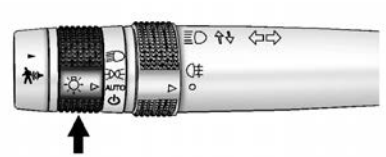
Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 6-1
Headlamp Flash 6-2
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Automatic Headlamp System 6-2
Headlamp Levelling Control . . . 6-3
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-3
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-4
Rear Fog Lights 6-4

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 6-5
Dome Lamps 6-5
Reading Lamps 6-5

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 6-6
Exit Lighting 6-6

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is on the turn signal lever.

There are four positions.

: Turn to operate the exterior lamps.

(Off): Turns the exterior lamps off.

AUTO (Automatic Headlamps): Turns the exterior lamps on and off automatically depending on outside lighting.

(Park Lamps): Turns on the park lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps together with the park lamps and instrument panel lights.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

(Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer): Push the turn signal lever away from you and release, to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.



This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Headlamp Flash

The headlamp flash feature works with the low beams or Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) on or off.

To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal lever toward you momentarily and then release it.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

The Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) system comes on in daylight when the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is on.
- The exterior lamp control is in the automatic position.
- The electric drive unit is not in P (Park).
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL are on, the taillamps, sidemarker lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on. The instrument cluster will be lit.

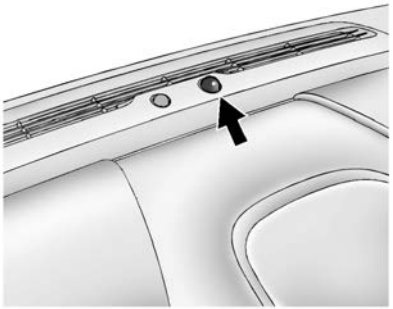
When the exterior lamp control band is turned to the headlamp position, the low-beam headlamps come on. The other lamps that come on with the headlamps will also come on.

When the vehicle is on and you are stopped, the DRL can be turned off by moving the shift lever to P (Park). The DRL will stay off until the shift lever is moved out of the P (Park) position.

The regular headlamp system should be turned on when needed.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



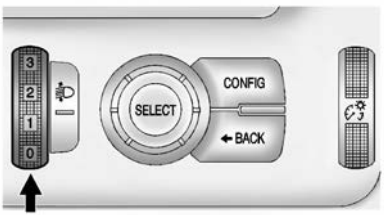
There is a light sensor on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off or may change to Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

Headlamp Levelling Control



The manual headlamp levelling control is located on the right side of the steering column. This feature lets the headlamp level be adjusted to suit the vehicle load. Correct adjustment of the headlamp level can reduce the glare for other drivers.

The low-beam headlamps must be on to adjust the headlamp levelling.

(Headlamp Levelling): Move the thumbwheel up or down to adjust the headlamps.

- 0 = Front seat occupied.
- 1 = All seats occupied.
- 2 = All seats occupied and load in the luggage compartment.
- 3 = Driver seat occupied and load in the luggage compartment.

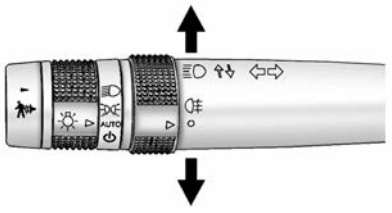
Hazard Warning Flashers



(Hazard Warning Flasher): Press this button, on the centre stack, to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble.

Press again to turn the hazard warning flashers off.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

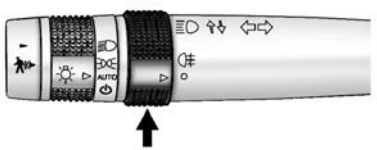
Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is complete. If the lever is moved momentarily to the lane change position, the arrow will flash three times.

The lever returns to its starting position when it is released.

If after signalling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb may be burnt out.

Have any burnt out bulbs replaced. If a bulb is not burnt out, check the fuse. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Right Side) on page 10-33* or *Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Left side) on page 10-34*.

Rear Fog Lights



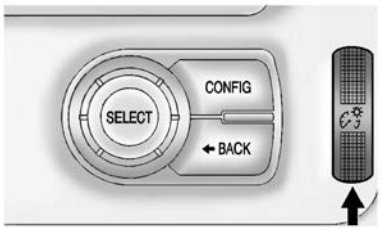
The rear fog lamp makes the vehicle more visible from the rear in foggy or misty conditions. The rear fog lamp control is located on the turn signal/multifunction lever.

(Rear Fog Lamp): Turn the fog lamp band on the lever to and release it, to turn the rear fog lamp on or off. The band will return to its original position. The rear fog lamp is automatically set to off each time the car is started.

The park lamps or headlamps must be on for the rear fog lamp to work. If not on, they will be switched on when the rear fog lamp is turned on.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

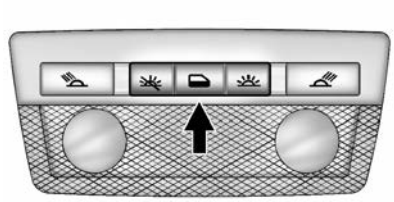


The brightness of the instrument panel cluster display, infotainment display and controls, steering wheel controls, and all other illuminated controls, as well as feature status indicators can be adjusted.

The thumbwheel is on the instrument panel beside the steering column.

Move the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

Dome Lamps



The dome lamp controls are in the overhead console.

To operate, press the following buttons:

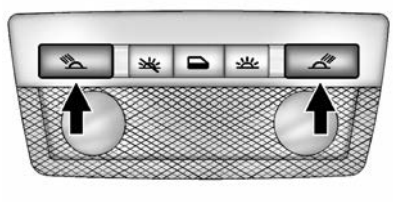
(On): Press to turn on the dome lamps.

(Door): Press to turn the lamps on automatically when a door is opened.

(Off): Press to turn the lamps off, even when a door is open.

Reading Lamps

There are front and rear reading lamps.



The front reading lamps are in the overhead console.

or : Press to turn each lamp on or off.



The rear reading lamps are in the headliner.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

The headlamps, park lamps, taillamps, reverse lamps, and the interior lights turn on briefly when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed. The lights turn off immediately when the POWER button is pressed or automatically after a brief period.

The entry lighting feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*

Exit Lighting

The headlamps, park lamps, taillamps, and number plate lamps come on by doing the following:

1. Turn off the ignition.
2. Open the driver door.

Some interior lights come on when the vehicle is turned off. The exterior lamps and interior lights remain on after the door is closed for a brief period and then turn off.

The exit lighting feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Overview 7-1
Using the System 7-5

Radio
AM-FM Radio 7-10
Radio Data System (RDS) . . . 7-13
Radio Reception 7-13
Quick Info 7-13
Pandora Internet Radio 7-13
Stitcher Internet Radio 7-18

Audio Players
CD Player 7-23
USB 7-24
Auxiliary Devices 7-31
Bluetooth Audio 7-31

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 7-33
Maps 7-36
Navigation Symbols 7-36
Destination 7-39
Configure Menu 7-47
Global Positioning System (GPS) 7-50
Vehicle Positioning 7-51
Problems with Route Guidance 7-52
Map Data Updates 7-52
Database Coverage Explanations 7-52

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 7-53

Bluetooth Phone/Devices
Bluetooth 7-58
Text Messaging 7-64

Introduction

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using the navigation system could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to yourself or others. Focus your attention on driving.

⚠ Warning

When driving the vehicle, be sure to keep the volume of the unit set low enough to hear sounds from outside the vehicle (e.g. road and traffic conditions).

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone or auxiliary device when driving. Make sure the Bluetooth or application software is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use the mobile phone or auxiliary device.

See *Defensive Driving on page 9-5*.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help with this by disabling some functions when driving. A greyed out function is not available when the vehicle is moving.

All functions are available when the vehicle is parked. Before driving:

- Become familiar with the infotainment system operation, buttons on the faceplate, and touch-sensitive screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up the navigation features before beginning to drive, such as entering an address or a preset destination.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by touching a single button or by using a single voice command for vehicles equipped with phone capability.

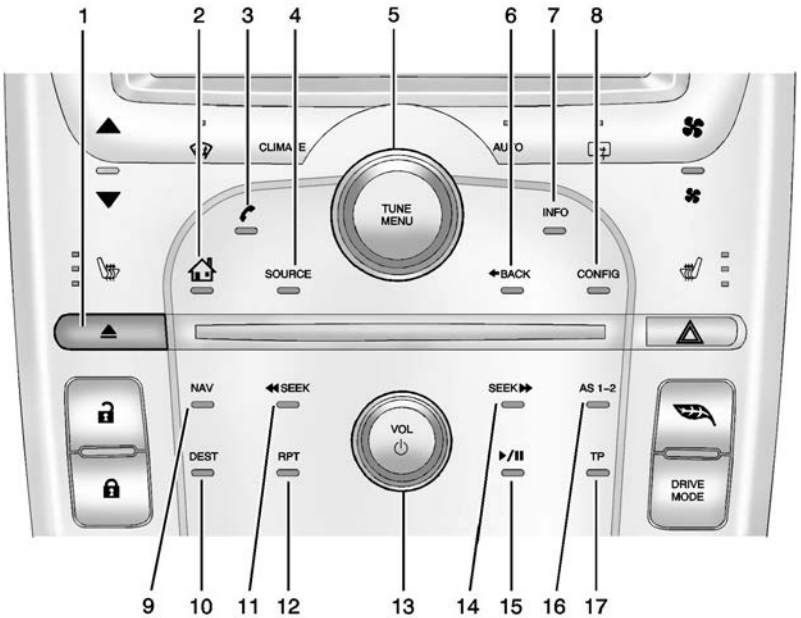
The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See “Retained Accessory Power (RAP)” in the owner manual.

Infotainment System Overview

The infotainment system is controlled by using the buttons, touch screen, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.

See *Using the System on page 7-5*.

- The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- Pandora® is a registered trademark of Pandora Media, Inc.
- Stitcher SmartRadio™ is a registered trademark of Stitcher, Inc.



1. ⏏ (Eject)
2. (Home Page)
3. (Phone Menu)
4. SOURCE
5. TUNE/MENU
6. ⬅ BACK
7. INFO (Information)
8. CONFIG (Configuration Menu)
9. NAV (Navigation)
10. DEST (Destination)
11. ⏪ SEEK (Previous/Reverse)
12. RPT (Repeat Navigation)
13. VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power)
14. SEEK ⏩ (Next/Forward)
15. ⏯ (Play/Pause)
16. AS 1-2 (Autostore)
17. TP (Time Program)

Infotainment Control Buttons

The buttons on the faceplate are used to start primary functions while using the infotainment system.

⏏ (Eject): Press to eject a disc from the CD player. See *CD Player on page 7-23*.

(Home Page): Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” in this section.

(Phone Menu):

- Press to enter the phone main screen. See *Bluetooth on page 7-58*.
- Press and hold to mute or unmute the infotainment system.

SOURCE: Press to change the audio source to AM, FM, CD, USB, AUX, or Bluetooth Audio.

TUNE/MENU:

- Press to enter the menu for the current band or media.
- Turn to highlight a feature.
- Press to activate the highlighted feature.
- Turn to manually change the radio station.

BACK: Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.

INFO (Information): Press to toggle through an audio or navigation information screen.

CONFIG (Configuration Menu): Press to adjust features for Languages, Time and Date, Radio Settings, Phone Settings, Navigation Settings, Display Settings, and Vehicle Settings.

NAV (Navigation):

- Press to view the vehicle's current position on the map screen.
- Continue pressing to cycle through the full map and split screens.

DEST (Destination):

- Press to enter a destination.
- If a destination has already been entered, press to access the Destination Menu. See *Destination on page 7-39*.

SEEK (Previous/Reverse):

- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track.
- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player on page 7-23*, *USB on page 7-24*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-31*.
- AM and FM: Press to seek to the previous strong station.

RPT (Repeat Navigation): Press to repeat the last voice guidance prompt.

VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power):

- Press to turn the system on and off.
- Turn to adjust the volume.

SEEK ⏩ (Next/Forward):

- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek the next track.
- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player on page 7-23*, *USB on page 7-24*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-31*.
- AM and FM: Press to seek to the next strong station.

⏵/⏸ (Play/Pause): Press to pause or resume playback. This feature is unavailable for AM and FM. See *CD Player on page 7-23*, *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-13*, *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-18*, *USB on page 7-24*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-31*.

AS 1-2 (Autostore): See "Autostore" in this section.

TP (Time Program): Press to set the time. See *Clock on page 5-36*.

Autostore

To use Autostore:

1. Press SOURCE to select FM or AM.
2. Press the AS 1-2 button for two seconds.
3. The radio searches and automatically stores the six strongest stations.

Press the AS 1-2 button to alternate between the Autostore stations and favourites.

Autostore does not delete previously stored favourite stations.

Touch Screen Buttons

Touch screen buttons are on the screen and highlighted when a feature is available. Some toggle screen buttons highlight when active and grey out when inactive.

Using the System

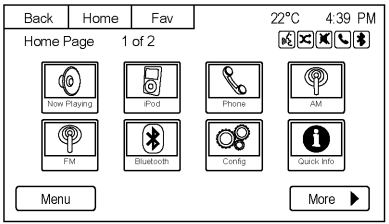
The infotainment system is controlled by touching the screen, and by using the knobs and other buttons.

Voice recognition, through the steering wheel controls, can be used to control the infotainment features.

Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel controls to begin voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

Home Page

The navigation system displays a Home Page that makes it easy to access many of the features.



Touch Screen Buttons

The Home Page allows access to many of the features.

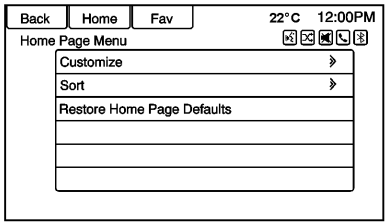
Back: Press to return to the previous page.

Home: Press to go back to the Home Page.

Fav: Press to display a page of stored favourites AM or FM stations. Keep pressing Fav to scroll through the favourite pages.

More ▶ : Press to go to the next page.

Home Page Customisation



The first Home Page can be customised.

To add screen buttons:

1. Press Menu.
2. Press Customise.
3. Press a screen button to add or remove from the first Home Page. The maximum number of buttons on Home Page 1 is eight.
4. Press Done.

To move screen buttons:

1. Press Sort.
2. Press an icon to swap with another icon on the first Home Page only.
3. Press Done.

To restore Home Page 1 defaults:

1. Press Menu.
2. Press Restore Home Page Defaults.
3. Press Yes or Cancel.

Home Page Features

Touch screen buttons are highlighted when a feature is available.

Various functions are disabled when the vehicle is moving.



Press the Now Playing screen button to display the active source page. The sources available are AM

or FM, CD, USB/iPod, Pandora® (if equipped), Stitcher™ (if equipped), and AUX.

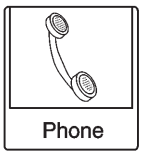
See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-10*, *CD Player on page 7-23*, *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-13*, *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-18*, and *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31*.



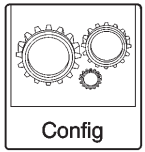
Press the Navigation screen button to display a map of your current vehicle position. See *Using the Navigation System on page 7-33*, *Maps on page 7-36*, *Navigation Symbols on page 7-36*, and *Configure Menu on page 7-47*.



Press the Destination screen button to display the Destination Entry home page or the Destination Menu. The available screen buttons provide easy access to a variety of ways to enter a destination. See *Destination on page 7-39*.



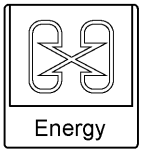
Press the Phone screen button to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth on page 7-58*.



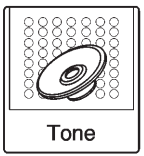
Press the Config screen button to display the Config main page. From this display, adjust features such as time and date, radio, phone, navigation, vehicle, and display. See *Configure Menu on page 7-47*.



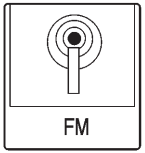
Press the Climate screen button to display the Climate Touch Screen Controls. See *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.



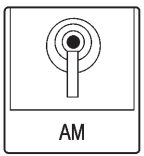
Press the Energy screen button to display the Energy information screen. See *Energy Information on page 5-35*.



Press the Tone screen button to display the Tone main page. Adjust the tone and speakers by pressing the screen buttons to change the levels of sound for treble, midrange, bass, fade, and balance. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-10*.



Press the FM screen button to display the FM main page and play the current or last tuned FM station. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-10*.



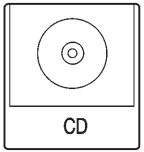
Press the AM screen button to display the AM main page and play the current or last tuned AM station. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-10*.



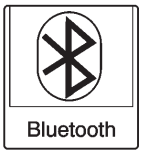
Press the Pandora screen button (if equipped) to display the Pandora home page and stream personalised radio stations based on artists, songs, genres, and comedians. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-13*.



Press the Stitcher screen button (if equipped) to display the Stitcher home page and stream news, sports, and entertainment shows through the audio system. See *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-18*.



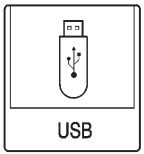
Press the CD screen button to display the CD main page and play the current or last CD track selected. See *CD Player on page 7-23*.



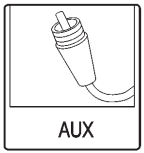
Press the Bluetooth screen button to display the Bluetooth Audio main page to play music through a Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-31*.



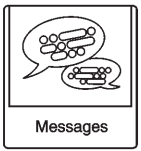
Press the iPod screen button to display the iPod main page and play the current or last track selected. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31*.



Press the USB screen button to display the USB main page and play the current or last track selected. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31*.



Press the AUX screen button to access any connected auxiliary device. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31*.



Touch the Messages screen button to display the Text Message Inbox. See *Text Messaging on page 7-64*.



Press the Quick Info screen button to access information on Audio playing and Navigation information. See *Quick Info on page 7-13*.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

⚠ Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power):

- Press to turn the radio on or off.
- Turn to increase or decrease the volume of the active source.

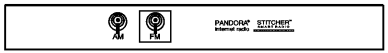
The steering wheel controls can also be used to adjust the volume. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2*.

Radio Operation

The radio will work when the vehicle is turned to ON/RUN. When turned from ON/RUN to OFF, the radio will continue to work for 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened.

The radio can be turned on by pressing ⏻ on the radio and will stay on for 10 minutes. Opening the driver door will not turn the radio off when pressing the power button.

The radio can be turned off at any time by pressing the power button.



Audio Source

Press SOURCE or SRC on the steering wheel controls to display and scroll through the available sources AM, FM, CD, USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio.

Infotainment System Settings

Tone Settings

To access the tone settings, press the Tone Settings button on the Home Page. Tone settings are specific to each source.

To adjust the settings:

- Bass: Press + or − to change the level.
- Mid (Midrange): Press + or − to change the level.
- Treble: Press + or − to change the level.
- EQ: Press or turn the TUNE/MENU knob to cycle through the preset EQ options. If the vehicle is equipped with the Bose® Energy Efficient Series sound system, EQ provides a choice of Manual or Talk settings.
- Fade: Press the F or R button for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.
- Balance: Press the L or R button for more sound from the left or right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.

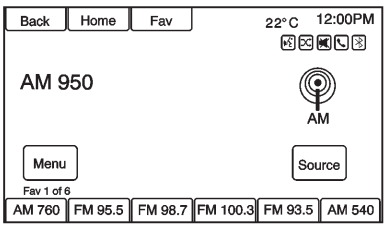
Finding a Station

Press SOURCE, or SRC on the steering wheel controls, to select AM, FM, CD, USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio.

Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to find a radio station. To select a preset station, press Fav to scroll through the favourite pages and then press a preset button on the radio or the screen button.

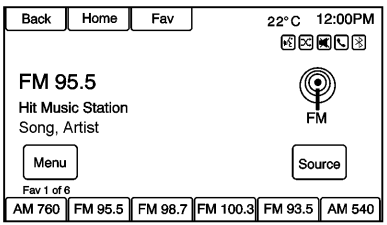
Seeking a Station

Press ◀◀ SEEK or SEEK ▶▶ to search for a station.



AM

1. Press the AM screen button on the Home Page or select AM by pressing SOURCE or SRC on the steering wheel controls, or say “Tune AM” through voice recognition.
2. Press the Menu screen button to display the AM stations.
3. Press to select an option. To update the station list, press Refresh.



FM

1. Press the FM screen button on the Home Page or select FM by pressing SOURCE or SRC on the steering wheel controls, or say “Tune FM” through voice recognition.
2. Press the Menu screen button to display the FM stations.
3. Press to select an option. To update the station list, press Refresh.

Storing Radio Station Presets

Up to 36 preset stations can be stored. AM or FM can be mixed.

1. From the AM or FM main page, press and hold any of the preset screen buttons at the bottom of the screen. After a few seconds, a beep is heard and the new preset information displays on that screen button.
2. Repeat for each preset.

Mixed-Band Presets

Each favourite page can store six preset stations. The presets within a page can be different radio bands.

To scroll through the pages, press FAV or the Fav screen button on the top bar. The current page number displays above the preset buttons. The stored stations for each favourite page display on the preset buttons.

To change the number of favourite pages displayed:

1. Press Config on the Home Page.
2. Press Radio Settings.
3. Press Number of Favourite Pages.

Recalling a Preset Station

To recall a preset station from a favourites page, do one of the following:

- Press the Fav screen button at the top bar to display the preset pop-up. Press one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.

- In the AM or FM main page, press one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.

Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can:

- Display messages from radio stations.

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available.

When information is broadcast from the current FM station, the station name or call letters display on the audio screen.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage can cause interference with the vehicle's radio.

Quick Info

Quick Info gives access to quick information on Audio playing and Navigation.

To access, press Quick Info on the Home Page or the INFO button on the faceplate. Depending on the system and if the options are available for that region, some options may be greyed out.

Audio: Displays information on current item playing.

Navigation Info: Displays information on current vehicle location.

Pandora Internet Radio

Pandora® is a free Internet radio service that streams personalised radio stations based on artists, songs, genres, and comedians.

Create stations using the Pandora website or smartphone application, then use (thumbs up) or (thumbs down) to personalise stations.

A phone or tablet with Internet connection and the Pandora application installed is required. Personal mobile phone data plans are used. Make sure the latest version is installed on the device and the volume is turned up.

To install Pandora:

- On an Android™ phone or Android Tablet, go to the Android Play Store, search for Pandora. Install to the phone, not to the SD card.
- On a BlackBerry® phone, go to the BlackBerry App World™ and search for Pandora.
- On an iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch®, go to the iTunes® Store and search for Pandora.

Launching Pandora

Connect the iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch to the USB port, or connect an Android through Bluetooth. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31* or *Bluetooth on page 7-58*. For first-time use, set up stations before connecting to the vehicle. The Pandora icon will be available on the Home Page and the source pop-up displays if the latest application is installed on the device.

Using the iPhone, iPod Touch, or iPad

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone or auxiliary device when driving. Stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone or auxiliary device.

1. Plug the device into the USB port. The phone screen must be unlocked.
2. Before driving the vehicle, launch the application on the device, them do one of the following:
   - Touch Pandora on the Home Page.
   - Touch / and say “Tune Pandora.”

If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is pressed, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

Pandora will always be highlighted on the Home Page when an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is connected using the USB port. To use, log into your account.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown, then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app make sure the Home Page is visible on the phone.

If the vehicle is shut off while tuned to Pandora and the iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is left connected to the USB port before the next ignition cycle, the radio will start playing Pandora when the vehicle is started.

If Pandora is shut down on the phone or another audio app is used, Pandora may not start on the next ignition cycle. If iPod source is selected, it may show iPod and then switch to Pandora.

Using an Android Phone

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone or auxiliary device when driving. Make sure the Bluetooth or application software is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use the mobile phone or auxiliary device.

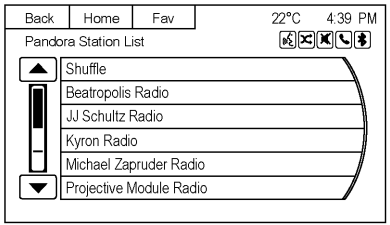
1. Pair the Android phone using Bluetooth.
2. Before driving the vehicle, launch the application on the device, then do one of the following:
   - Touch Pandora on the Home Page.
   - Touch ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Pandora.”

If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is pressed, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, and then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Pandora Menus



Press Menu on the Pandora main page.

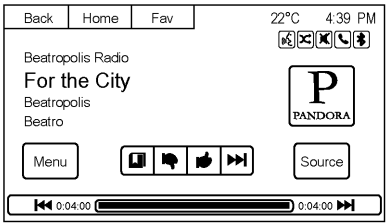
Pandora has a menu system with the following:

Shuffle: Press to play the stations in random order.

User-Created Stations: Press to play a user-created station.

Pandora Features

Pandora has features to rate tracks, skip tracks, or change stations.



(Bookmarks): Press while playing a track to bookmark either the track or the artist. Bookmarks are viewable on www.pandora.com.

(Thumbs Down): When pressed, Pandora stores the information, changes to the next track, and does not play the track on this station again. This helps Pandora choose which tracks should not play on this station. This feature is only available on user created stations.

(Thumbs Up): When pressed, Pandora stores this information and is highlighted for the remainder of the track. This helps Pandora choose which tracks should play on this station.

(Next Track): When pressed, Pandora changes to the next track.

(Play/Pause): Press on the radio to pause playback. Press again to resume.

Tuning Pandora Stations: When Pandora is playing, use the / button on the steering wheel to tune to any Pandora station on the device.

1. Press the / button on the steering wheel.
2. Say “Tune Pandora <Classic Rock> Radio.”

Pandora voice control will not work until Pandora is launched the first time during that ignition cycle.

Pandora Skip Limit

Pandora limits the number of skips allowed on their service. When the skip limit is reached, will not skip the currently playing track, but feedback will be recorded.

Pandora Advertisement

Pandora may display advertisements. Artist name and track title will not be displayed and the skip track button is not available.

Pandora Troubleshooting

Unable to Connect Device to Vehicle

If the device is unable to connect to the USB or Bluetooth:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Open and close the driver door, wait about 30 seconds, and try to connect the device again.

Unable to Start Pandora

If the device is unable to launch Pandora:

- Check that the latest version of Pandora is installed.
- Check that there is an active account logged into Pandora.
- Have at least one station created.
- For Android and BlackBerry devices, check that the device is paired with the vehicle, and the Bluetooth icon on the display is highlighted.
- For iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad devices, check that the USB cable is connected to the USB port and the screen is unlocked.
- Close Pandora on the device and launch again. Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Pandora application. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

Thumbs Up or Thumbs Down Error

If there is an error trying to rate a track with the 👎 or 👍 buttons, the message “Thumbs Down Error” or “Thumbs Up Error” will display. Press OK to retry.

Loss of Audio

Loss of Pandora audio can happen in different ways:

- Weak or lost data connection.
- Device needs to be charged.
- Application needs to be relaunched.
- Connection between phone and radio lost.
- If any iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad is connected to Bluetooth and the dock connector, go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.
- The volume is too low. Turn up the volume on the device.
- The battery saver and task manager applications on the phone can cause Pandora to function incorrectly. Remove those apps from the phone or remove Pandora and Bluetooth from the task lists.

If the connection is lost between the application and device, a message “Please unlock your phone or restart the phone app and try again” will display. Press OK to retry.

If pressing OK does not clear the issue on the phone, see "Please Unlock Your Phone or Restart Phone App and Try Again” under "Common Pandora Messages" following.

Common Pandora Messages

Please See Device: When not logged in or when authentication failed, see the device. Press OK to continue.

Paused or Audio Paused: Playback is paused on the radio or on the device. Press ⏵/⏸ or play on the device.

No Stations Found: Logged in but no stations have been created. Press OK to continue.

Please Unlock Your Phone or Restart Phone App and Try Again: Communication failure between the radio and the phone application or the device is locked.

Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Pandora application. Close Pandora on the device and launch again.

Unlock the phone and check that Home Page is shown on the phone/device.

See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

See www.pandora.com/help for more information. If the service will not work, see your dealer for assistance.

Stitcher Internet Radio

Stitcher SmartRadio™ is an Internet radio service that streams news, sports, and entertainment shows through the audio system. Create personalised, on-demand stations or discover new shows through Stitcher's preset stations. To set up an account, download the application from the Android Market or iTunes Store, or go to www.stitcher.com.

A phone or tablet with Internet connection is required for this application. Personal mobile phone data plans are used. Make sure the latest version is installed on the device and the volume on the device is turned up.

BlackBerry phones are not supported for this application.

To install Stitcher:

- On an Android phone or Tablet with Internet connection, go to the Android Play Store, search for Stitcher, and install to the phone, not to the SD card.
- On an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, go to the iTunes store and search for Stitcher.

Launching Stitcher

Connect the iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch to the USB port, or connect Android through Bluetooth. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31* or *Bluetooth on page 7-58*. For first-time use, set up the stations before connecting to the vehicle. The Stitcher icon will be available on the Home Page and source pop-up displays if the latest application is installed on the device.

Using the iPhone, iPod Touch, or iPad

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone or auxiliary device when driving. Stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone or auxiliary device.

1. Plug the device into the USB port. The phone screen must be unlocked.
2. Before driving the vehicle, launch the application on the device, then do one of the following:
   - Touch Stitcher on the Home Page.
   - Touch ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Stitcher.”
3. If Stitcher does not begin playing, select a category and then a station.

If nothing happens when the available Stitcher screen button is pressed, download the latest Stitcher application and retry.

Stitcher will always be highlighted on the Home Page when an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is connected using the USB port. To use, log into your account.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown, then the phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app and make sure the Home Page is visible on the phone/device.

Using an Android Phone

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone or auxiliary device when driving. Stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone or auxiliary device.

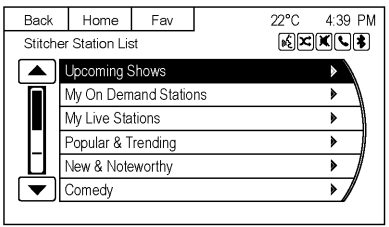
1. Pair the Android phone using Bluetooth.
2. Before driving the vehicle, launch the application on the device, then do one of the following:
   - Select Stitcher on the Home Page.
   - Touch ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Stitcher.”
3. If Stitcher does not begin playing, select a category and then a station.

If nothing happens when the available Stitcher screen button is pressed, download the latest Stitcher application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please unlock your phone or restart the app” message is shown, then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Stitcher Menus



Press Menu on the Stitcher main page.

Stitcher has a menu system with the following:

My On Demand Stations: Displays a list of favourite stations and shows.

Select and store programs as favourites on the device. Favourite station lists can be created to include favourite shows which can be accessed through My On Demand Stations.

Stitcher Station Categories: Displays categories by topic.

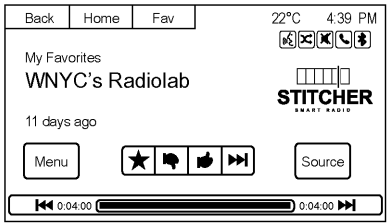
When a category then sub-category is selected, the radio will start playing the first program in that sub-category.

Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to display the first 24 stations of that sub-category.

Current Station Playlist: While listening to a show, turn the TUNE/MENU knob to display the menu list of shows available for the current station.

Stitcher Features

Stitcher service has features to rate or skip shows, or change stations.



★ **(Favourites):** When pressed, the current show is added to the favourites station.

👎 **(Thumbs Down):** When pressed, Stitcher changes to the next show. This helps Stitcher provide a personalised listening experience.

👍 **(Thumbs Up):** When pressed, Stitcher stores this information and 👍 is highlighted for the remainder of

the show. This helps Stitcher provide a personalised listening experience.

⏭ **(Next Show):** When pressed, Stitcher changes to the next show.

⏵/⏸ **(Play/Pause):** Press on the radio to pause playback. Press again to resume.

Stitcher Advertisement

Stitcher may display advertisements. Artist name and title may not display and the skip track button is not available.

Switching Between Pandora and Stitcher

To switch between Pandora and Stitcher, press the application icon on the iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad. This is not required for Android devices. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-13*.

Stitcher Troubleshooting

Unable to Connect Device to Vehicle

If the device is unable to connect to the USB or Bluetooth:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Open and close the driver door, wait about 30 seconds, and try to connect the device again.

The battery saver and task manager applications on the phone can cause Stitcher to function incorrectly. Remove those apps from the phone or remove Stitcher and Bluetooth from the task lists.

Unable to Start Stitcher

If the device is unable to launch Stitcher:

- Check that the latest version of Stitcher is installed.
- Check that there is an active account logged into Stitcher.
- For Android devices, check that the device is paired with the vehicle, and the Bluetooth icon on the display is highlighted.
- For iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad devices, check that the USB cable is connected to the USB port and the screen is unlocked and the Home Page is showing.
- Close Stitcher on the device and launch again. Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Stitcher application. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

Loss of Audio

Loss of Stitcher audio can happen due to:

- Weak or lost data connection.
- Device needs to be charged.
- Application needs to be relaunched.
- Connection between phone and radio is lost.

- If any iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad is connected to Bluetooth and the dock connector, go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.
- The volume is too low. Turn up the volume on the device.

If the connection is lost between the application and device, a message "Please unlock your phone or restart the phone app and try again" will display. Press OK to retry.

If pressing OK does not clear the issue, see "Please unlock your phone or restart phone app and try again" under "Common Stitcher Messages" following.

Common Stitcher Messages

Please Try Again Later: A general error has occurred. A data connection may be unavailable due to a weak or lost signal or the Stitcher service being temporarily down. Press OK to continue.

Paused or Audio Paused: Playback is paused on the radio or on the device. Press ⏵/⏸ or play on the device.

Please See Device: When user is not logged in or when authentication failed, see device. Press OK to continue. Disconnect the phone from the radio and follow the Stitcher account login process on the phone.

No Stations Found: Logged in but no stations have been created. Press OK to continue.

Please Choose a New Station: The end of the station has been reached and there is no more content to play. Select a new station through the Stitcher menu.

Please Unlock Your Phone or Restart Phone App and Try Again: Communication failure between the radio and the phone application or the device is locked.

See www.stitcher.com/help for more information. If the service will not work, send an e-mail to feedback@stitcher.com.

Audio Players

CD Player

The CD player is capable of playing:

- Most audio CDs
- CD-R
- CD-RW
- MP3, unprotected WMA, and AAC formats

When playing any compatible recordable disc, the sound quality may be reduced due to the disc, the method of recording, the quality of the music recorded, or how the disc has been handled.

There may be increased skipping and difficulty reading recorded tracks, finding tracks, and/or loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the disc for damage or try a known good disc.

To avoid damage to the CD player:

- Do not use scratched or damaged discs.
- Do not apply labels to discs. The labels could get caught in the player.
- Insert only one disc at a time.
- Keep the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.
- Use a marking pen to label the top of the disc.

Loading and Ejecting Discs

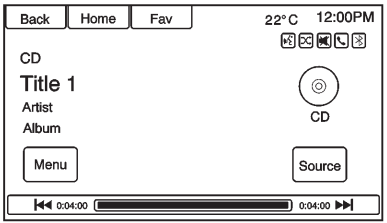
To load a disc:

1. Turn the infotainment system on.
2. Insert a disc into the slot, right side up. The player pulls it in the rest of the way. If the disc is damaged or improperly loaded, there is an error and the disc ejects.

The disc automatically plays once loaded.

Press ⏏ to eject a disc from the CD player. If the disc is not removed within a short period of time, it is automatically pulled back into the player.

Playing an Audio CD



1. Press the CD screen button on the Home Page or select CD from the source pop-up to display the CD main page.
2. Press the Menu screen button to display the menu options.
3. Press to select the option.

On the CD main page, the track number displays and the Song, Artist, and Album information displays when available.

Use the following radio controls to play the disc:

⏵/⏸ (Play/Pause): Use to pause or resume play.

⏪ SEEK (Previous/Reverse):

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, it seeks to the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track starts from the beginning.
- Press and hold to fast reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

SEEK ⏩ (Next/Forward):

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

TUNE/MENU: Turn to the right or left to select the next or previous track. Press this knob to select from the list. If a track is selected from the menu, the system plays the track and returns to the CD screen.

Error Messages

If Disc Error displays and/or the disc comes out, it could be due to:

- The disc has an invalid or unknown format.
- The disc is very hot. Try the disc again when the temperature returns to normal.
- The road is very rough. Try the disc again when the road is smoother.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. Try the disc again later.
- There was a problem while burning the disc.
- The label is caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, try a known good CD.

If any error continues, contact your dealer.

USB

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage or Certified Windows Vista®/Media Transfer Protocol (MTP) device can be connected to the USB port.

The USB port is in the centre console.

The USB icon displays when the USB device is connected.

USB Media Formats

The USB port will support the following media formats:

- MP3
- Unprotected WMA
- Unprotected AAC

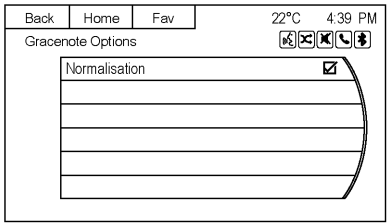
Gracenote®

Gracenote technology embedded into the radio helps manage and navigate the USB device music collection. When a USB device is connected to the radio, Gracenote identifies the music collection and delivers the correct album, artist name, genres, and cover art on the screen. If information is missing, Gracenote will fill it in if information is available.

Searching Music Library Using Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition: Gracenote improves music search and navigation by identifying bands, artists, and albums names that may be hard to pronounce, irregular spellings, and nicknames. For example, Gracenote helps the system understand artist names like “INXS” or “Mötley Crüe”.It also allows the use of names like: “The Boss,” “G.N.R,” “The Fab Four,” and thousands of other famous artist nicknames as voice commands to access music. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

Normalisation: Normalisation helps to improve the voice recognition accuracy for titles that sound similar. It also helps group long lists of genres into 10 common genres. For example, there may be multiple rock genres in the media library; normalisation will group all those into one rock Genre. Normalisation default is off.



To turn Normalisation on:

1. Press CONFIG or Config on the Home Page.
2. Press Radio Settings, then press Gracenote Options.
3. Press Normalisation to turn on or off.

Cover Art: The Gracenote embedded database contains cover art or album art information for the music on the USB device. If the music is recognised by Gracenote and does have cover art, Gracenote will use the cover art found in the embedded database and display it on the radio. User predefined cover art will always be used first. If no

cover art is found Gracenote will use generic Genre graphics or images of artists.

More Like This

The Gracenote database contains attributes for Music, such as genre, era of music, region, artist type, mood, etc. Use this to create a playlist of up to 30 songs "more like" currently listened to song. This playlist will be stored in the Playlist Menu when the device is reconnected. If songs are removed from the device, the system will simply skip over those songs and play the next available song.

Use the touch screen or voice recognition to create a More Like This Playlist. See “Voice Recognition Commands” in *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

Gracenote Indexing

While Gracenote is indexing, infotainment features are available including selecting music from the menu. Voice recognition music will not be available until the radio has completed indexing the device. Devices with more music may take longer to index. The device will index when plugged into the radio for the first time. When Indexing is removed from the screen, the radio is ready to support music search. On the next connection or ignition cycle, Indexing will show briefly on the screen. The radio is searching for changes to the device and preparing the music list. If there are no changes, the voice recognition music search will be available. The radio will index and store two devices with up to 10,000 songs on each device.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The radio will not be able to play back write-protected music.
- File systems supported: FAT32, NTFS, Linux, and HFS+.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
  - Maximum folder structure depth: 8 levels.
  - Maximum number of MP3/WMA files that can be displayed: 10,000.
  - Playlist entries must be in the form of relative paths.
  - The system attribute for folders/files that contain audio data must not be set.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB and it begins to play.
- Press the Now Playing screen button on the Home Page.
- Press SOURCE to scroll until the USB source screen is available.

- Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel controls to play CD, Artist, Album, Song Title, or Song Genre. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

The following playlist formats are supported:

- M3U (Standard and Extended)
- iTunes
- PLS (Standard)
- WAX
- ASX
- RMP

The radio supports plugging a mobile phone in as a USB drive as long as the mobile phone supports USB mass storage class or has USB disc drive support enabled.

While the USB source is active, use the following to operate USB function:

TUNE/MENU Knob: Turn to scroll through the list. Turn quickly to fast scroll alphabetically through large lists.

⏵/⏸ (Play/Pause): Press to start, pause, or resume play of the current media source.

⏪ SEEK (Previous/Reverse):

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than five seconds, the current track restarts.
- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

SEEK ⏩ (Next/Forward):

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

The following are available through the USB Menu:

Shuffle: Press to play the tracks randomly. Press again to stop shuffle.

Play More Like This:

1. Press to automatically create a playlist of songs that are like the song currently playing.
2. The radio will show "Playlist Creation Succeeded" and continue playing the current song.

   Playlist Creation Failed may appear if a song is not found in the Gracenote Database.

Delete Automatic Playlist: Press to delete a More Like This playlist.

Folders: Press to open a folder list to access the files within the folder structure.

Playlists:

1. Press to view the playlists on the USB.
2. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Press to view the list of artists on the USB.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, press All Songs or press an album and then select a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Press to view the albums on the USB.
2. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Press to view the genres on the USB.
2. Select a genre to view a list of all songs of that genre.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Press to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. Songs are displayed as they are stored on the disc. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

File System and Naming

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The infotainment system displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Playing from an iPod®

This feature supports the connection of an iPod.

There may be problems with the operation and function in the following situations:

- When connecting an iPod on which a more recent version of the firmware is installed than is supported by the infotainment system.
- When connecting an iPod on which firmware from other providers is installed.

To connect an iPod:

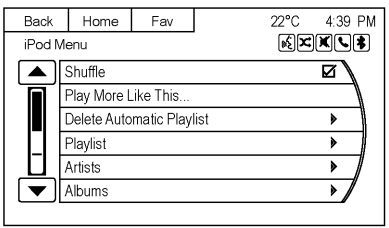
1. Connect one end of the standard iPod USB cable to the iPod.
2. Connect the other end to the USB port in the centre console.

iPod music information displays on the radio's display and begins playing through the vehicle's audio system.

The iPod battery recharges automatically while the vehicle is on. The iPod shuts off and stops charging when the vehicle is shut off.

If the iPod is an unsupported model, it can still be listened to in the vehicle by connecting to the auxiliary input jack using a standard 3.5 mm stereo cable.

iPod Menu



Use the iPod Menu to select:

Shuffle: Press to play the tracks randomly. Press again to stop shuffle.

Play More Like This: Allows the radio to create playlists with song/tracks that are similar to what is being listened to. The radio will create a playlist with up to 30 similar songs. The playlist will appear in the Playlist category of the menu for future listening.

1. Press to automatically create a playlist of songs that are More Like the song currently playing.
2. The radio will show “Playlist Creation Succeeded” and continue playing the current song.

Delete Automatic Playlists: Press to delete a More Like this playlist.

Playlists:

1. Press to view the playlists on the iPod.
2. Select a playlist name to view a list of all songs in the playlist.
3. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Press to view the artists on the iPod.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums with songs by the artist.
3. Select an album.
4. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Albums:

1. Press to view the albums on the iPod.
2. Select an album name to view a list of all songs on the album or select All Songs to view all songs on the iPod.
3. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Press to view the genres on the iPod.
2. Select a genre name to view a list of artists of that genre.

3. Select an artist to view albums or All Albums to view all albums of that genre.
4. Select Artist to view albums.
5. Select Album to view songs.
6. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Press to view a list of all songs on the iPod.
2. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts:

1. Press to view the podcasts on the iPod.
2. Select a podcast name to begin playback.

Composers:

1. Press to view the composers on the iPod.
2. Select the composer to view a list of songs by that composer.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Audiobooks:

1. Press to view the audiobooks on the iPod.
2. Select the audiobook from the list to begin playback.

Playing from an iPhone or iPad®

This feature supports iPhone and iPad.

Follow the same instructions as stated previously for using an iPod. To use voice recognition to play music, say “Play USB,” “Play Artist,” “Play Album,” “Play Song,” or “Play Genre.” See *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

iPhone, iPod Touch and iPad Troubleshooting

⚠ Warning

Do not use a mobile phone or auxiliary device when driving. Stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone or auxiliary device.

When an iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad are connected through USB and Bluetooth, the audio may not be heard when the iPod source on the radio is selected. If a phone call is received while listening to the iPod source and there is no audio for the iPod after the source, then go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.

Some functionality may differ based on operating system version on device.

USB Troubleshooting

If the device is not being recognised or the music is missing screen information, restore the radio defaults:

1. Press Config.
2. Press Vehicle Settings.
3. Press Return to Factory Settings.
4. Press Yes.

Pair the phone again and the device will have to index again.

Bluetooth Audio and Voice Recognition

See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-31* and *Voice Recognition on page 7-53* for information using voice recognition with Bluetooth audio.

Make sure all devices have the latest software downloaded.

Auxiliary Devices

This vehicle has an auxiliary input jack in the centre and rear console:

Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- MP3 player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is stationary and/or in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system automatically begins playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, do one of the following:

- Press SOURCE to scroll all of the available audio source screens, until the AUX source screen is selected.
- Say “Play AUX” using voice recognition to play the auxiliary device. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

Bluetooth Audio

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See “Pairing a Phone/Device” under *Bluetooth on page 7-58*.

To play music through a Bluetooth device:

1. Power on the device, pair, and connect the device.

2. Music can be launched by doing one of the following:
   - Press the Bluetooth Audio screen button on the Home Page.
   - Press SOURCE until Bluetooth Audio is selected.
   - Press the SRC button on the steering wheel controls until Bluetooth Audio is selected. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2*.
   - Use voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

When a phone is connected to the system through Bluetooth Audio the phone notifications and sounds may not be heard on the phone until Bluetooth is disconnected. Notification features may vary based on the phone. Check the phone manufacturer's information for notification support.

Bluetooth Audio Menu

Press the Menu screen button and the following may display:

Shuffle: Press the TUNE/MENU knob to turn shuffle on or off. Not all devices support the shuffle feature.

When selecting Bluetooth audio, the Bluetooth device internal music player may not open depending on the status of the device. All devices launch and play back audio differently. Make sure the correct audio source is playing on the device for Bluetooth audio playback on the infotainment system. When the vehicle is not moving, use the device to begin playback.

When selecting Bluetooth audio as a source, the infotainment system may display the Bluetooth Audio Paused screen with no audio playing. Press play on the device or press ⏵/⏸ to begin playback. This may happen depending on how the device communicates over Bluetooth.

Some phones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the infotainment system. When the infotainment system receives this information, it will check to see if any album art is available and display it.

When playing music on the infotainment system from a Bluetooth device, make sure the Bluetooth device is unlocked and the intended music application is showing on the home screen.

For iPhone/iPod touch and iPad devices, Bluetooth Audio will not work if the device is connected through the USB and Bluetooth at the same time.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

⚠ Danger

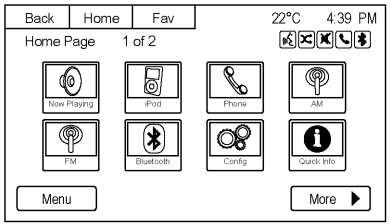
Giving extended attention to navigation tasks while driving will greatly increase the risk of a collision that may cause personal injury or death.

Road safety has absolute priority!

Only operate this system if the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so.

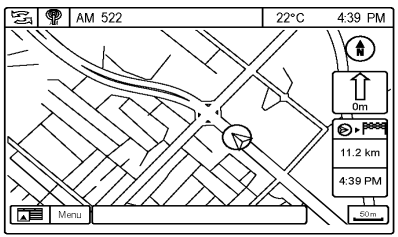
The driver's full attention is always required while driving.

Use voice guidance directions whenever possible.



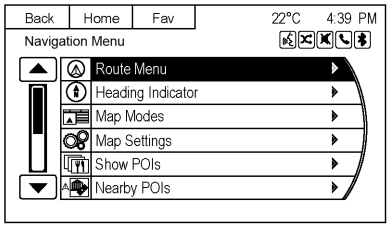
Use the NAV button on the faceplate or Navigation screen button on the Home Page to access the navigation map.

Press the NAV button again to change between alternative views of the normal split and full map views.

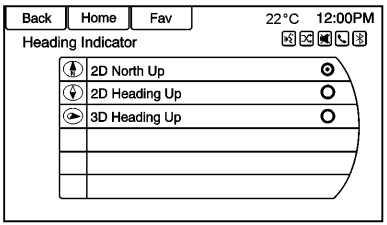


The Menu screen button at the bottom right side of the display accesses the Navigation Menu.

The touch-sensitive buttons available are:



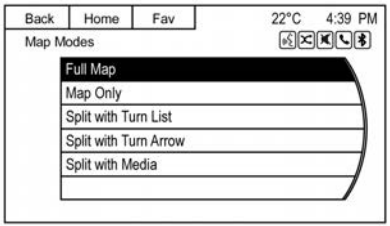
Heading Indicator



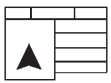
Press Heading Indicator to display the Map View. There are three indicator settings:

- 2D North Up: Displays North at the top of the map screen regardless of the direction the vehicle is travelling.
- 2D Heading Up: Displays the direction the vehicle is travelling. The shaded triangle icon points North.
- 3D Heading Up: Is the same as 2D Heading Up, but the map is in 3D.

Map Modes

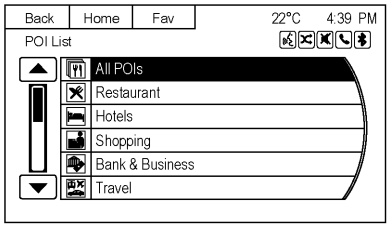


Press to change the view of the maps while using the navigation function. The system offers a variety of full and split views. Some views are only selectable when route guidance is active.



An alternative method to change the view of the maps would be to press the map mode icon.

Nearby POIs

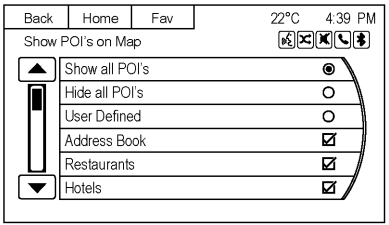


Press to display a search list of nearby POIs. Select the desired POI.

POIs Along Route

Press to display a search list of POIs that lie along or near the route to the destination. Select the desired POI.

Show POIs on Map



Press to customise which major POI categories are displayed on the map.

Switch Route Time/Destination

Press to customise the Arrival/ Travel time and Waypoint/ Destination information displayed in the main map screen.

Current Position Information

Press to display a split screen showing detailed information about the vehicle position. This feature can also be accessed by pressing the vehicle information tab on the lower centre of the display. The location can be saved to the Address Book by pressing Save in the split screen.

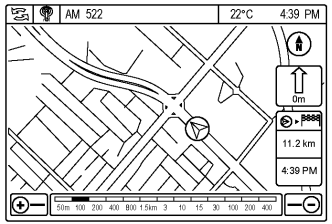
Destination Information

Press to display a split map screen showing the next waypoint/ destination. The location can be saved to the Address Book by pressing Save in the split screen.

Map Adjustments

The system lets you adjust the scale of view on the map. Also, as you drive, the map scrolls automatically based on the direction of travel.

Map Scales



There are two methods to change the map scale:

- Turn the TUNE/MENU knob clockwise or anticlockwise to zoom out or in.
- Press the Map Scale + or − button on the bottom corners of the map screen to change the zoom level.

  The map scale bar times out if the zoom level is not changed within a few seconds.

Scroll Features



- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map screen and the scroll symbol displays.
- Tap the map to centre at that location on the screen.
- Press and hold the screen in any direction outside the scroll symbol to scroll the map in that direction.
- Scroll speed increases when touching closer to the edge of the screen.
- Press NAV on the faceplate to exit map scrolling and return to the current vehicle location on the map.



Press the cycling arrows located at the top of the map screen to toggle from the normal top bar (Home and Fav) to the audio information bar.

Maps

This section includes basic information about the map database.

The maps are stored in an internal flash memory that is used in the Navigation system.

Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads and residential roads. The detailed areas include points of interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections after the production of the infotainment system. The Navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.



The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map.



The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.



The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.

The estimated time and distance to the destination are displayed.



If waypoints have been added to the current route, each waypoint destination displays estimated time and distance.



This symbol indicates that the map view is North up: North up displays North at the top of the map screen regardless of the direction the vehicle is travelling.

Touch this screen symbol to change the view to Heading up or 3D.



This symbol indicates that the map view is Heading up.

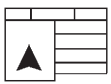
Heading up view displays the direction the vehicle is travelling at the top of the map screen. The shaded triangle indicates North.

Touch this screen symbol to change to 3D mode.

The 3D symbol is the same as the Heading up symbol, but the map is in 3D.



The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal.



This symbol at the bottom of a map screen changes the current map mode screen.

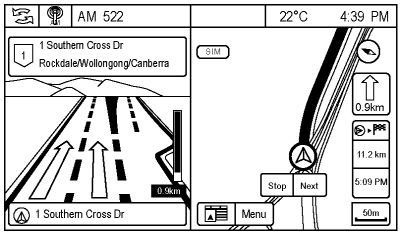


This symbol on the right of the map screen displays the speed limit while on a route. The speed limit may not always be accurate due to changes since the map data was created. Always follow the posted speed limit on the road.

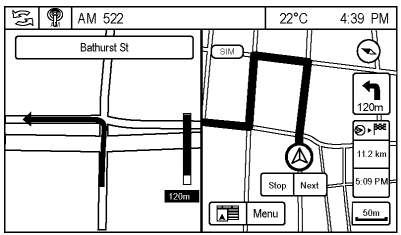
Driving on a Route

Urgent Manoeuvre Alert

The system will give an indication that the next manoeuvre is close.

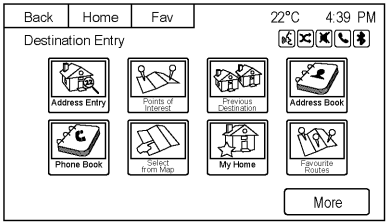


Driving on a Highway



Driving on a Residential Road

Destination



If route guidance is not activated, touch the Destination Entry screen button on the Home Page to access the Destination Entry screen. Several options can be selected to plan a route by entering destinations. Some destination entry items such as Previous Destinations, Address Book and My Home may be greyed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

Letters of the alphabet, symbols, punctuation and numbers, when available, display on the Navigation screen as alpha/numeric keyboards. The alpha keyboard displays when data needs to be entered.

QWERTY or ABC: Touch to toggle between QWERTY or ABCDEF keyboard character layouts.

ÄÖ or Sym: Touch to toggle between additional characters or symbols.

Space: Use to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

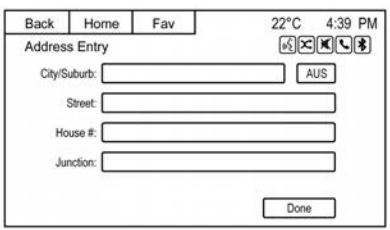
Delete: Touch to delete an incorrect character that has been selected.

Address Entry



Touch the Address Entry screen button to display the Address Entry screen. Set a route by entering the city/suburb, street name, house number and street junction.

To make name selection easier, the system highlights only characters that are available after the previously entered one.



City/Suburb: Enter a city/suburb name.

Street: Enter a street name.

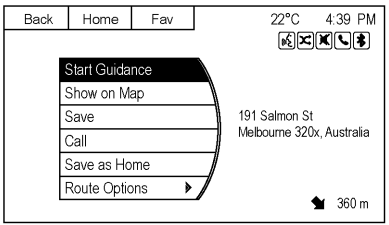
House #: Enter a valid address number.

Junction: Enter a street name that intersects with the selected street.

Entering the city or suburb first:

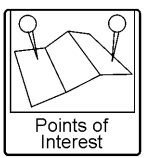
1. Enter the city/suburb.
2. Enter the street name. Use the Delete screen button to delete an incorrectly entered character.

   A list displays if six or fewer names are available. If there are more than six, there is a match counter with a number of available streets. Touch the List screen button to view the list and select the street.
3. Enter the house number.
4. Touch the Done screen button at any time and the system tries to resolve a destination based on the entered information, then displays it on the Destination Confirmation screen.

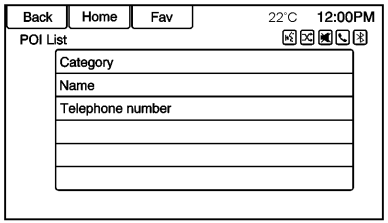


5. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

Points of Interest (POI)

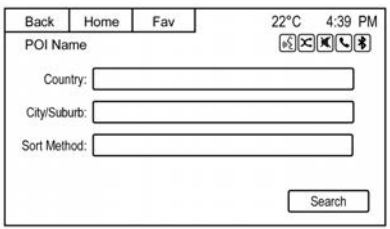


Touch the Points of Interest screen button on the Destination Entry page. Several options can be selected to plan a route.



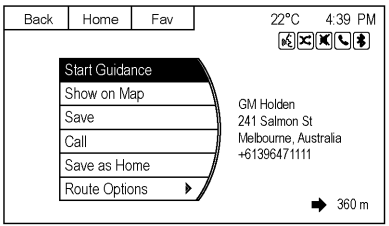
The POI entry list allows selection of a destination search by category, name, or number.

Entering by POI name:



1. Select Search by Name.
2. Make sure the correct country, city or suburb are present, then select Search.

3. Enter the POI name.
4. Select a few of the characters or spell the name in full, by using the alpha keyboard.
5. Touch the List screen button, or if the list has six or fewer items, a list of POIs will immediately display.
6. Select the desired POI.



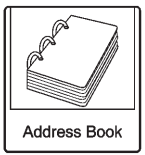
7. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

Previous Destinations



Select a destination from the Previous Destination List. Up to 15 points that have been previously entered can be recalled. If the list is full, the oldest destinations are automatically deleted once the newest destinations are added.

Address Book



If no destination is saved to the address book, save a destination:

1. Touch Destination on the Home Page.
2. Enter an address using any of the destination methods (Address Entry, POI Entry, etc.).
3. On the Destination Confirmation screen, select Save.
4. The system displays the options Name, Address, Number, Icon and Done. Touch Done to save the destination.
5. To customise the address book entry, select Name, Address, Number or Icon.

If a destination is already saved to the address book, touch Destination Entry on the Home Page to display the Address Book screen button.

Choose a destination by selecting an address that has been stored in the address book.

1. Touch the Address Book screen button. A list displays the address book entries.
2. Select the destination from the list.

3. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

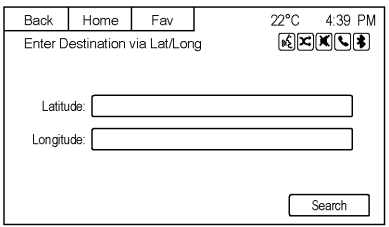
To edit Address Book entries:

1. Select an item from the address book.
2. On the Destination Confirmation screen, select Edit.
3. The system displays the options Name, Address, Number, Icon and Delete. Touch Delete to delete the destination from the address book.
4. To customise the address book entry, select Name, Number, or Icon.
5. Select Done when complete.

Latitude/Longitude Coordinates



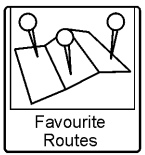
Choose a destination based on latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates.



To enter the location as coordinates, latitude and longitude:

1. Touch Destination on the Home Page. Touch the Latitude and Longitude screen button to display the screen above.
2. Select Latitude or Longitude to change. Enter the coordinates in degrees, minutes, and seconds. Then touch Back to save and exit.
3. Touch the Search screen button if the information is correct.
4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Favourite Routes



Adding a Favourite Route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button.
2. Touch the Favourite Routes screen button to display New Favourite Route.

3. Select New Favourite Route and enter a favourite route name.
4. Touch OK and the display returns to the favourite route information screen.
5. Add a waypoint by using any of the destination methods, such as address entry, POI entry, etc.
6. Touch Back to save and exit.

Selecting a Favourite Route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button.
2. Touch the Favourite Routes screen button to display a list of available favourite routes.
3. Scroll and select a favourite route.
4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Deleting a favourite route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button. Touch this button to display the list of available favourite routes.
2. Scroll and select the route to be deleted.
3. Touch Delete Favourite.
4. Touch Confirm to delete the Favourite Route.

Changing the route name:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Favourite Routes screen button. Touch this button to display the list of available favourite routes.
2. Scroll and select the route to edit.
3. Select Edit Name.
4. Using the keypad, enter the name.
5. Touch the OK screen button. The new name will be in the Favourite Routes Menu.

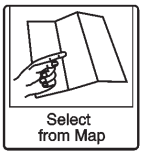
My Home



If no home destination is entered, save a destination by touching the Home Page Destination screen button. Enter a destination using any of the destination entry methods (Address Entry, POI Entry, etc.). Select Save as Home from the Destination Confirmation screen.

If a destination is already saved as home, touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the My Home screen button. Touch this button to start route guidance.

Select from Map



1. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button to display the Select from Map screen button. Touch this button to display the map screen with the current location.
2. Touch the Zoom in/out button on the screen and touch the map to locate the destination to select. Touch and hold a finger on the map to activate fast scrolling.

   The scroll symbol will be centred on the map.
3. Touch the Go button on the bottom of the screen to display the Destination Confirmation screen.
4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Destination Confirmation

Multiple options are available on the Destination Confirmation screen:

Start Guidance: Touch to start a route calculation to the displayed destination.

Show on Map: Touch to switch to the map view with the displayed destination centred on the map.

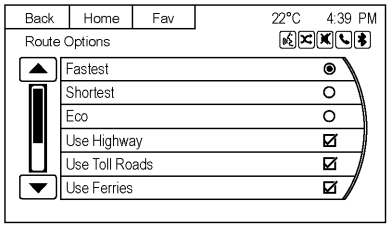
Route Options: Touch to change route options. See “Route Options” following.

Call: Touch to initiate a phone call to the displayed phone number, if phone capability is available.

Save as Home: Touch to save the displayed destination as your home destination. The home destination will be stored at the top of the list of destinations in the address book.

Save/Edit: Touch to save the displayed destination into the address book. If the displayed destination is already stored in the address book, Edit will show as the menu item.

Route Options



Touch to display various route options.

Fastest: This calculates the quickest route.

Shortest: This calculates the shortest route.

Eco: This calculates the most fuel-efficient route based on speed and distance.

Under the Route Options menu, there are route preferences that by default are all enabled.
A checkmark placed next to each preference indicates this. All of these preferences are used when calculating the route. If any of these

preferences are unselected, the route will be calculated without including these preferences.

Use Highways: Deselect to avoid major roads.

Use Toll Road: Deselect to avoid toll roads.

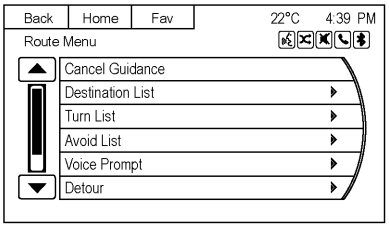
Use Ferries: Deselect to avoid ferries.

Use Tunnels: Deselect to avoid tunnels.

Use Time Restricted: Deselect to avoid time restricted roads.

Use Car Train: Deselect to avoid car trains.

Menu with Route Guidance Active



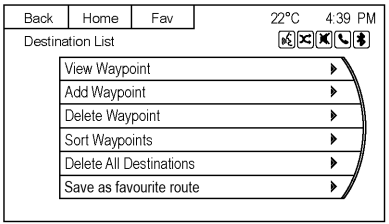
Several functions can be performed after a destination has been entered. Touch the Home Page Destination screen button or press the DEST button to access the Route Menu screen.

Cancel Guidance

Touch Cancel Guidance to cancel the current route.

Destination List

Up to three waypoints can be added to the current route. The waypoints can be sorted (moved) or deleted.

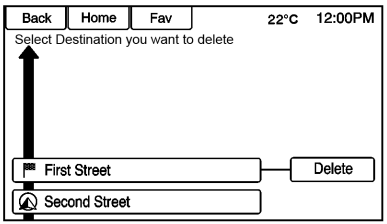


To add a waypoint:

1. From the Destination List menu, touch Add Waypoint.
2. Enter the waypoint by any of the add destination methods. The system calculates and highlights the route and the route can be started.
3. To add more waypoints, touch Add Waypoint to add the waypoint in the order desired on the route.

To delete a waypoint:

1. From the Destination menu, touch Delete Waypoint.



2. Select the waypoints to be deleted. Touch the Delete screen button.

The Sort Waypoints feature allows reorganisation of the destination list.

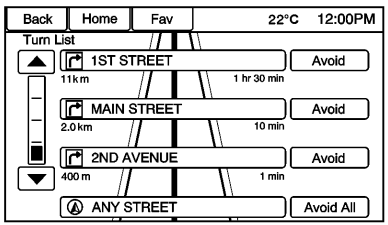
To sort a waypoint:

1. From the Route menu, touch Destination List.
2. Touch Sort Waypoints.
3. Select the waypoint to move.
4. Select the location to move the waypoint to.
5. Touch Add.

Instead of deleting individual waypoints, select Delete All to delete all waypoints at the same time.

To save a destination list as a favourite route, select Save as Favourite Route.

Turn List



Select Turn List to view a list of manoeuvres for the entire route. Touch the Avoid screen button next to one of the turn manoeuvres to avoid a segment of roads.
A maximum of 8 avoided segments are allowed.

Avoid List

Select Avoid List to display a list of avoided road segments with the option to remove the avoided items from the list.

Voice Prompt

Select Voice Prompt to view options to disable or manage navigation voice prompts and traffic alert prompts.

Detour

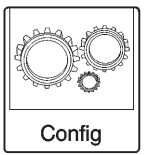
Select Detour to display the route detour options. Select to detour the whole route or by a specific distance.

Route Options

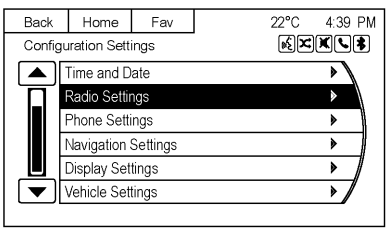
This feature can be accessed from the Destination Confirmation Menu and Route Menu with Route Guidance Active. See “Destination Confirmation” for more information.

Configure Menu

The Configuration Menu is used to adjust features and preferences, such as Sound, Radio, Nav (Navigation), Display, or Time Settings.



1. Press the Config screen button on the Home Page.



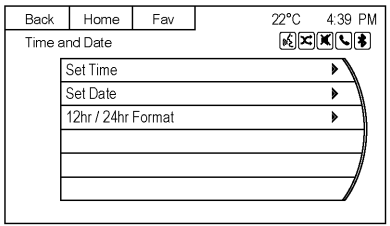
2. Touch-tap the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47* for information on adjusting most vehicle settings.

Languages

Press the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate to enter the menu options. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob or touch-tap the scroll bar to scroll through the available options. Press the TUNE/MENU knob or press Languages to display the languages.

Note: English is the only available language.

Time and Date Settings



From the Time and Date Settings screen button, press to display the Time and Date Settings menu.

Set Time: Press the + or − to increase or decrease the Hours and Minutes displayed on the clock.

Set Date: Press the + and − to increase or decrease the day.

Set Time Format: Press the 12 Hour screen button for standard time; press the 24 Hour screen button for military time.

Press the Back screen button to save the adjustments.

Radio Settings

Press the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate to enter the menu options. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob or touch-tap the scroll bar to scroll through the available options. Press the TUNE/MENU knob or press Radio Settings to display the radio settings menu. Press this feature to make changes for radio information displayed, preset pages, Auto Volume Control, and Audio Cues.

The Radio Settings are:

Audio Cue Options: Audio Cue Options are used to welcome the driver to the vehicle as well as indicate when the vehicle is ready to drive.

Press to turn the Audio Cues on or off. A checkmark indicates that the audio cues are on.

The Audio Cue Volume may also be adjusted. Press the Audio Cue Volume screen button to hear the selected sound level.

Auto Volume: Select OFF, Low, Medium, or High sensitivity to automatically adjust the volume to minimise the effects of unwanted background noise that can result from changing road surfaces, driving speeds, or open windows. This feature works best at lower volume settings where background noise is typically louder than the sound system volume.

Gracenote Options: Press to enable/disable Normalisation used to improve voice recognition and media groupings. See *CD Player on page 7-23*, *USB on page 7-24*, *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-31*, and *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-31*.

Startup Volume: Press to set the maximum volume level for startup that will be used even if a higher volume had been set when the radio was turned off.

Number of Favourite Pages: Press to select the number of FAV pages to be displayed.

Software Version Information: Press to display information about the system and update software if available.

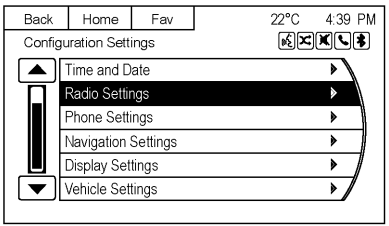
Phone Settings

See *Bluetooth on page 7-58* in the “Phone” section for more information on phone settings.

Navigation Settings

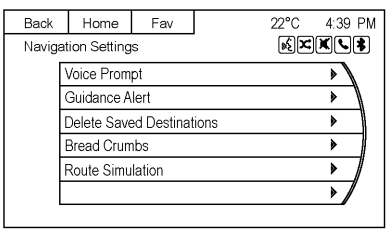
Press the Config button on the Home Page to enter the setup menu. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob or touch-tap the scroll bar until the Navigation Settings option displays. Select this feature to make changes to Voice Prompt, Guidance Alert, Bread Crumbs, and Delete Saved Destinations.

Navigation Settings Button

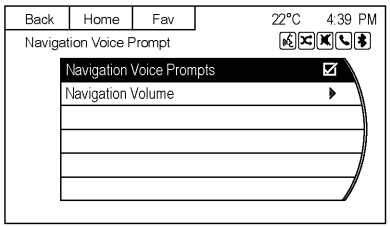


Various navigation system settings are available through the Configuration Menu. Some options are only available after a route is planned.

Press Navigation Settings to access the navigation system settings.



Voice Prompt

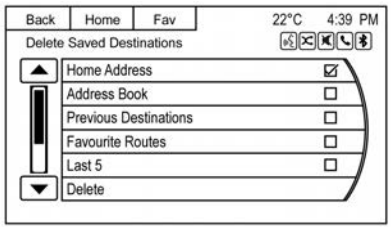


The Voice Prompt Menu allows changes to the voice prompt features.

Navigation Voice Prompts: Select the On or Off button to turn the voice instructions on or off while travelling on a planned route.

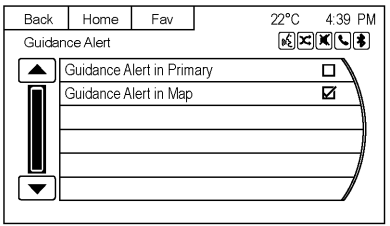
Navigation Voice: Select Navigation Voice Volume to change the volume of the navigation prompts.

Delete Saved Destinations



Press to delete all saved destinations. A Delete Saved Destinations submenu displays. Select the desired options for deletion and press delete at the bottom to continue. A confirmation screen displays requesting to delete or cancel.

Guidance Alerts



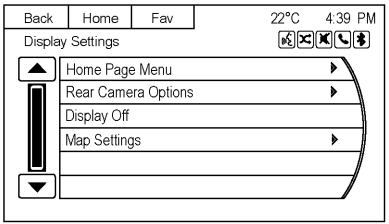
Press to enable the guidance alert pop-up to be viewed on the map or on the main screens such as audio, phone, etc. A checkmark appears to indicate the guidance alert mode is on.

Vehicle Settings

See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Display Settings

Press the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate, then select Display Settings from the list.



The following options may display:

Home Page Menu: Press to customise the first page of the Home Page.

Rear Camera Options: The symbols on the rear park assist can be turned on or off. A checkmark indicates that the symbols are on. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC) on page 9-37*.

Display Off: Press to turn off the display. The display will return when any radio buttons are pressed or the screen is touched.

Map Settings: Press to enter the submenu to enable Speed Limit display on map, and change Map Display settings.

Map Display: Press to change the screen background.

- The Automatic setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.
- The Day setting brightens the map background.
- The Night setting darkens the map background.

To change the overall brightness setting for the display, use the vehicle interior lighting instrument panel illumination control.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances

can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS Satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See *Navigation Symbols on page 7-36*.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance on page 7-52*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- If a tunnel runs parallel to a surface road.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes direction more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof rack is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains have been installed.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first Navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps on page 7-36*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstruction.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data is updated periodically, provided that the map information has changed. To check for the availability of updated maps, contact your dealer.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas which previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates on page 7-52*.

Voice Recognition

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation of the infotainment system features.

Voice recognition can be used when the infotainment system is on or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-14*. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel. The audio system mutes. A voice prompt states, “Please say a command.” Wait until the tone is heard before speaking.

   If there is no tone, make sure that the volume is turned up.

   While voice recognition is active, the system displays a 🎤 symbol in the top right of the screen.

2. Clearly speak one of the commands listed later in this section.

Press ✆ / 🎤 twice on the steering wheel to skip the voice prompt messages.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

1. Press and release ⏮ / 🚗 on the steering wheel control to cancel a command, if the system response does not match the voice command, or say “Goodbye” or “Cancel.”
2. The system replies, “Goodbye.”

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

- When multiple commands are available, choose the command that works best for you.
- Words in parentheses are optional. For example, for the command “Tune FM (frequency),” saying “Tune FM 87.7” or “Tune FM” are both valid commands.
- When the command is recognised, the system will either perform the function or ask to confirm the choice.
- When the system does not recognise the command, the system says “pardon.”
- If experiencing difficulty with the system recognising a command, confirm that the command is correct. Try saying the command clearly or wait for a brief moment after the tone.
- Background noise such as a climate control fan positioned on high, open windows, and very loud outside noises, even if the windows are closed, can cause voice commands to be misunderstood.
- To increase or decrease the voice volume during a voice recognition session, turn the

volume knob of the infotainment system, or press the volume steering wheel control. If the volume is adjusted during a voice recognition session, a Volume bar appears on the screen showing the voice volume level as it is being adjusted. This also changes the volume of the guidance prompts.

- When using navigation commands, take the time to become familiar with the address. Long delays when giving the address can result in the system not recognising the address or routing to a different location than intended.
- When providing the house number portion of the address, the system recognises both digit format and numerical text. An example would be to say, “3-0-0-0-1” or “Thirty Thousand One.”

Voice Recognition Help

To enter the help playback session, clearly speak one of the help commands.

Help: The system plays back more specific help commands such as Radio Settings for the user to choose from.

Radio: Use this command to learn about how to select a band (AM or FM), and how to change radio stations by speaking frequency numbers.

Phone: Use this command to learn about how to dial, pair a device, or delete a device.

My Media: Use this command to learn how to play specific tracks, artists, albums, devices connected to the USB port, or to change sources.

Settings: Use this command to learn about how to turn Verbose on or off.

Voice Recognition Commands

The following list shows the voice commands available for the infotainment system with a brief description of each. The commands are listed with the optional words in parentheses. To use the voice commands, see the previous instructions.

Radio Commands

Tune AM, Tune FM, Tune Pandora, Tune Stitcher: Instructs the system to go to the specific band and the last station.

Tune AM (frequency), Tune FM (frequency): Instructs the system to go to the specific station.

Thumbs Up: Instructs the system to give the current song or station a thumbs up in Pandora or Stitcher.

Thumbs Down: Instructs the system to give the current song or station a thumbs down in Pandora or Stitcher.

Phone Commands

Dial or Call (phone number or contact): Instructs the system to start a phone call. For example, say “Dial 1234 5678.” To call a phone book contact, say “Dial” or “Call,” say the name and location, and then say “Dial.” For example, say “Call John at Home” or “Call John at Work.” If a number is not recognised, the first number in the list will be called.

Pair or Connect: Instructs the system to begin pairing a device.

Digit Dial: Instructs the system to dial a phone number one digit at a time. After saying the digits, say “Dial.”

Redial or Redial Last Number: Instructs the system to dial the last phone number called.

Select Device or Change Phone: Instructs the system to switch to a different paired device. The device must be selected from the screen or using the TUNE/MENU knob.

Delete Device: Instructs the system to delete a paired device.

My Media Commands

CD, AUX, USB, or Bluetooth Audio: Instructs the system to change the source.

Play CD: Instructs the system to play a CD. For example, say “Play CD.”

The following commands only apply to USB, iPod, and iPhone sources. They are supported after the device has been indexed.

Play Artist (artist name): Instructs the system to play songs by a specific artist. For example, say “Play Artist <artist name>”

Play Album (album title): Instructs the system to play a specific album.

Play Song (song title): Instructs the system to play a specific song.

Play Genre (genre name): Instructs the system to play songs of a particular genre.

Search Artist (artist name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific artist. For example, say "Search Artist <artist name>”

Search Composer (composer name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific composer. For example, say "Search Composer <composer name>”

Search Album (album name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific album. For example, say "Search Album <album name>”

Search Genre (genre name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs for a specific genre. For example, say "Search Genre <genre name>”

Search Folder (folder name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs in a specific folder. For example, say "Search folder <folder name>”

Search Playlist (playlist name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs in a specific playlist. For example, say "Search playlist <playlist name>"

Search Audiobook (audiobook name): Instructs the system to show a list of all tracks in a specific audiobook. For example, say "Search audiobook <audiobook name>"

Search Podcast (podcast name): Instructs the system to show a list of all tracks in a specific podcast. For example, say "Search podcast <podcast name>"

More Like This: Instructs the system to create a playlist of tracks similar to the current track playing.

Settings Commands

Verbose (set) on (mode), Verbose (set) off (mode): Instructs the system to turn voice prompts on or off. When off, this feature turns off voice prompts.

List Devices: Instructs the system to give a list of devices to use.

Other Commands

Goodbye: Instructs the system to end a phone call or voice recognition.

Cancel: Instructs the system to cancel an action.

Go Back, Back, Previous: Instructs the system to go back to a prior menu.

Main Menu: Instructs the system to go to the main menu.

Yes, Yep, Yup, Ya, Sure, Right, Correct, OK, Positive, You Got it, Probably, You Bet: These can be used to say “Yes.”

No, Nope, Na, No way, Wrong, Incorrect, Negative, Not really, No I said, No I Did Not, No I Do Not: These can be used to say “No.”

Next Page, Page Down: Instructs the system to scroll forward one page in a list.

Previous Page, Page Up: Instructs the system to scroll back one page in a list.

Navigation Commands

To activate the navigation voice recognition:

1. Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel. The audio system mutes. A voice prompt says, “Please say a command.” Wait until the tone is heard before speaking.

   If there is no tone, make sure the volume is turned up.

   While voice recognition is active, the system displays a symbol in the top right of the screen.
2. Clearly speak the command “Navigation.”
3. Clearly speak one of the commands in this section.

The following commands apply only after the Navigation command is given.

Directed Address: Allows an address to be stated one step at a time. The format will be City/Suburb, Street, then House Number.

Intersection: Allows an Intersection to be stated as the destination. The format will be City/Suburb, Street, then Intersection.

Home: Instructs the system to start guidance to address saved as My Home.

Contact: When a phone is paired to the system, which contains Address Information stored for contacts, the address associated with that contact can become a route. If the system cannot resolve the address, an error displays.

Points of Interest or POI: Allows a Point of Interest to be stated as a destination. Become familiar with the POI categories and sub-categories in the system by pressing Destination from the Home Page or DEST from the faceplate, then selecting Point of Interest. POI commands for Along Route and Around Destination will be available if route guidance is active.

Add Waypoint: Allows addition of individual waypoints or the destination. The system will ask for the choice of entry method to continue. An example is to say, “POI Along Route” or “Intersection.”

Delete Waypoint: When guidance is active, this command allows the deletion of individual waypoints or the destination. If guidance is not active the system will indicate the destination list is empty.

Where Am I?, My Location, or Current Position: Instructs the system to give the current position of the vehicle.

Help: The system plays back more specific help commands associated with Navigation or a Navigation sub-feature.

Help Commands

- Help
- Hands-Free Calling

After each list of help commands, the following are available:

- Go Back
- Repeat
- Cancel
- Help
- Goodbye

Hands-Free Calling

- Call
- Store
- Commands
  - Call
  - Store
  - My Number
  - Minutes

- Store Last Number
- Digit Dial
- Redial
- Dial
- Number Recall
- Directory
- Digit Store

Bluetooth Phone/ Devices

Bluetooth

Overview

For vehicles equipped with Bluetooth capability, the system can interact with many mobile phones and devices, allowing:

- Placing and receiving hands-free calls.
- Sharing of the mobile phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle. The phone book will only display when that phone is connected.
- Placing outgoing calls by voice recognition.

The system can be used while in ON/RUN, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP). The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 10 m. The radio can connect to most Bluetooth-enabled phones. Available features and functions may be dependent on the device.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

/ (Push to Talk): Press to answer incoming calls and start voice recognition.

/ (Mute/End Call): Press to end a call, decline an incoming call, or cancel voice recognition.

+ − (Volume): Press + or − to increase or decrease the volume.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview on page 7-1*.

(Phone): Press to enter the Phone main menu.

Voice Recognition

The voice recognition system uses commands to control the system and dial phone numbers.

When using voice recognition:

- The system may not recognise voice commands if there is too much background noise.
- A tone sounds to indicate that the system is ready for a voice command. Wait for the tone and then speak.
- Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

See *Voice Recognition on page 7-53*.

Audio System

Sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the VOL/⏻ knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Bluetooth Audio

See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-31*.

Pairing with Infotainment Controls

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth-enabled phone and an audio playback device can be paired to the system at the same time.
- Up to five devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the radio will connect to the first phone in the list or to the phone that was previously connected.

Pairing a Phone/Device

1. Press the CONFIG button or ✆.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Pair Device. The infotainment system displays “Waiting for Pairing.” If the device supports a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN), it will display. The PIN is used in Step 6.

5. Start the pairing process on the mobile phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.
6. Locate and select the device named MyLink in the list on the mobile phone. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 4, or to confirm the six-digit code matches. The system recognises the new connected phone after the pairing process is complete.
7. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted. Some phones will put connection request or phonebook request in a pull-down task bar at the top of the screen. Drag down the task bar and look for connection/ phonebook request and accept.
8. Repeat to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones/Devices

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.

Deleting a Paired Phone/Device

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the phone to delete and follow the screen prompts.

Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and available to be connected to the Bluetooth system before the process is started.

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the new phone to connect to and follow the screen prompts.

Pairing with Voice Recognition

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press ✆ / 🎤. The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Pair.” The system responds with “Please search for Bluetooth devices on your phone. Confirm or enter number.”

3. Start the pairing process on the phone to be paired.
4. Locate and select the device named MyLink in the list on the mobile phone. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone to enter the PIN or to confirm the six-digit code matches. The system responds “successfully paired.”
5. Repeat Steps 1 to 4 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

The system can list all mobile phones paired to it. If a paired mobile phone is also connected to the vehicle, the system responds with “is connected” after that phone name.

1. Press ✆ / 🎤. The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Device List.”

Deleting a Paired Phone

If the phone name to delete is unknown, see “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones.”

1. Press ✆ / 🎤. The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete Device.”
3. The system responds with: “To delete a device, please select its name from the list.” Select the device to delete on the display and it will be removed.

To cancel this command, press the ⬅ BACK button on the radio faceplate.

Connecting to a Different Phone or Device

To connect to a different mobile phone, the system looks for the next available mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone to be connected, this command may need to be repeated.

1. Press ✆ / 🎤. The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Change Phone.”
   - To select a device, press the name on the display.
   - If another mobile phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Making a Call Using Phone Book and Infotainment Controls

For mobile phones that support the phone book feature, the Bluetooth system can use the contacts stored on the mobile phone to make calls. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide or contact the wireless provider to find out if this feature is supported.

When a mobile phone supports the phone book feature, the Phone Book and Call Lists menus are automatically available.

The Phone Book menu allows access to the phone book stored in the mobile phone to make a call.

The Call Lists menu allows access to the phone numbers from the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, and Missed Calls menus on the mobile phone to make a call.

The radio will display the first 1,000 contacts and the phone numbers for each contact including Home, Work, Mobile, and Other.

To make a call using the Phone Book menu:

1. Press or the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phone Book.
3. Select the letter group of the phone book entry to scroll through the list of names/ numbers.
4. Select the name.
5. Select the number to call.

To make a call using the Call Lists menu:

1. Press or the Phone screen button.
2. Select Call Lists.
3. Select the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, or Missed Calls list.
4. Select the name or number to call.
5. Select Call.

Making a Call Using the Infotainment Controls

To make a call:

1. Press or the Phone screen button.
2. Press Enter Number.
3. Enter the phone number.
4. Select Call to start dialling the number.

To make a call using voice recognition, see “Making a Call” earlier in this section.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Using the Infotainment Controls

Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to “Answer” or “Decline” and press the TUNE/MENU knob or press Accept or Decline on the screen.

Using Steering Wheel Controls

Press / to answer or / to decline the call.

Call Waiting Using the Infotainment Controls

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Switch Call or select Switch Call on the screen.

Call Waiting Using Steering Wheel Controls

Call waiting must be supported on the mobile phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

- Press ✆ to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press ✆ again to return to the original call.
- To decline answering the incoming call, press Decline on the screen or take no action.
- Press ✆ / ✆ to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Conference Calling Using the Infotainment Controls

Conference calling and three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work. This feature is only supported when the vehicle is not moving.

To start a conference while in a current call:

1. Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Enter Number.
2. Enter the phone number and select Call.
3. After the call has been placed, turn the TUNE/MENU knob and choose Merge Calls.
4. To add more callers to the conference call, repeat Steps 1–3. The number of callers that can be added is limited by your wireless service carrier.

Ending a Call

Using the Infotainment Controls

Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Hang Up or press Hang Up on the screen.

Using Steering Wheel Controls

Press ✆ / ✆.

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

Using the Infotainment Controls

Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Mute Call. Press again to cancel mute.

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the Bluetooth system and the mobile phone.

The mobile phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred.

To Transfer Audio from the Bluetooth System to a Mobile Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle, press the Transfer Call button on the screen or press and hold the ✆ / 🎤 button on the steering wheel.

To Transfer Audio to the Bluetooth System from a Mobile Phone

Use the audio transfer feature on the mobile phone. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for more information. Press the Transfer call button on the screen or press and hold the ✆ / 🎤 button on the steering wheel.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

Using the Infotainment Controls

1. Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Enter Number.
2. Enter the phone number, or select Enter Number on the screen and select digits, then press OK.

Text Messaging

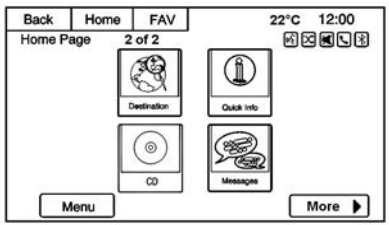
The infotainment system can display text messages, play back a message over the audio system, and send a predefined message reply.

Not all phones support all functions and work with Bluetooth.

The infotainment system only supports the receipt of SMS text messages. A request may need to be accepted on the phone or some phone settings may need to be changed to allow text messaging to function. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

The text messaging feature can also be initiated via voice recognition.

Using Text Messaging



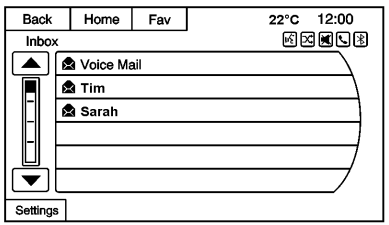
1. Touch the Messages button on the Home Page or select Text Messages from the Phone main screen.

Note: The Messages button on the home page and Phone main screen option will only be visible if a paired

phone supporting SMS text messages with correct settings is connected.

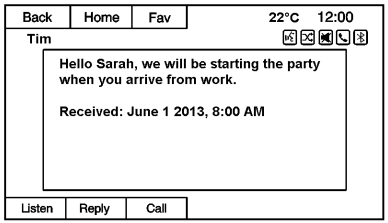
iPhone: Ensure Show Notifications is ON in the paired MyLink settings on the phone.

Android: Accept and activate Message Access Profile (MAP) if requested.



2. Select a message for viewing. Viewing messages is only available while the vehicle is not in motion.

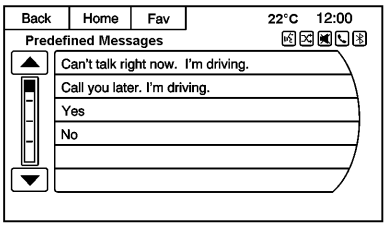
   Depending on the phone connected, either existing messages or messages as they are received are displayed.



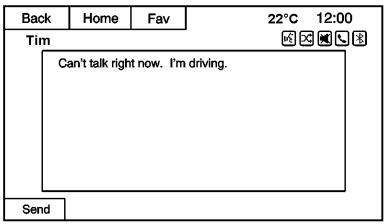
3. View the message. The message view screen is not available while the vehicle is in motion.

- Touch Listen to hear the message through the audio system.
- Touch Call to dial the contact or number associated with the text message. Not all phones allow calling the sender of the message and will result in not being able to select Call.
- Touch Reply to reply with a predefined message, to a text message that was received as an incoming message. Not all phones support the sending of messages.

Replying to Text Messages



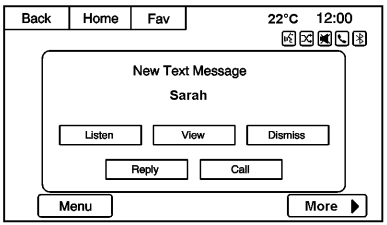
1. Select the desired message from the display of predefined messages to send as the reply.



2. Touch Send to send the message.

   Alternatively, touch Back to cancel and return to the previous screen.

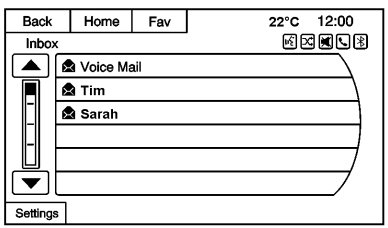
Incoming Text Messages



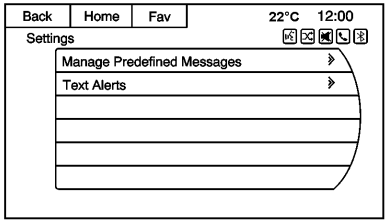
A pop-up screen is displayed when there is an incoming text message. The pop-up will remain on the screen until Dismiss is selected.

- Touch Listen to hear the message through the audio system.
- Touch View to view the message. The message view screen is not available while the vehicle is in motion.
- Touch Reply to reply to the text message using a predefined message.
- Touch Call to dial the contact or number associated with the text message.
- Touch Dismiss to close the pop-up incoming message screen.

Text Messaging Settings



In the Text Message Inbox, touch Settings to access the Text Message Settings menu.



- Touch Manage Predefined Messages to create a user defined message that can be used later to reply to a text message.

  Use the touch screen keyboard to enter the message.

  Touch Done to store.
- To delete a predefined message, select the message and touch Yes to confirm.

- Touch Text Alerts to choose the alert behaviour for incoming text messages:
  - Text alert with tone
  - Tone only
  - Off

✍ NOTES

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Automatic Climate Control System 8-1

Air Vents
Air Vents 8-8

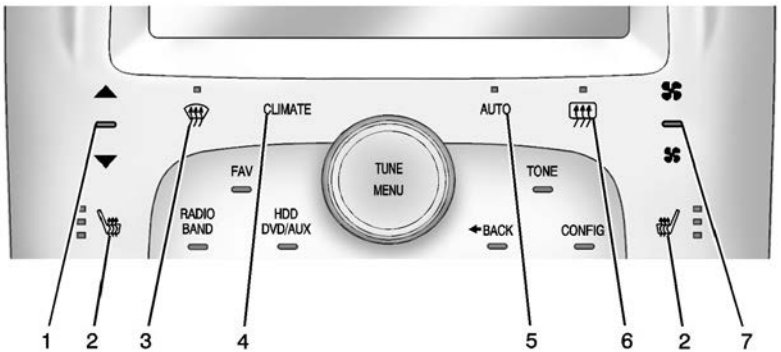
Climate Control Systems

Automatic Climate Control System

The climate control buttons and the touch screen are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.

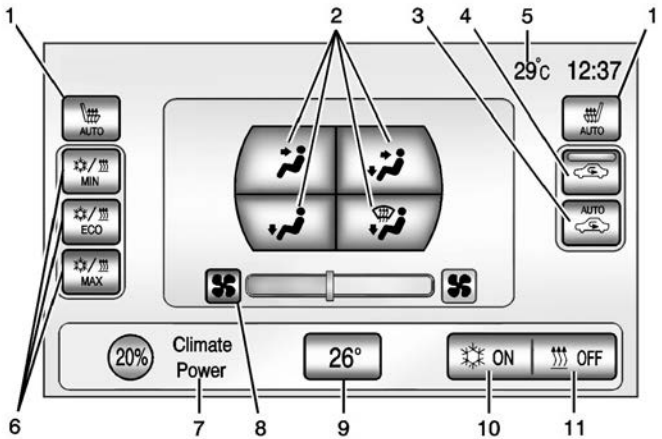
The vehicle may require the use of an auxiliary heat source under certain cold conditions. This provides additional heating and defrost capability obtained by running the engine, even if the high voltage battery is adequately charged. Under these conditions, the engine will start and use fuel. Make sure there is fuel in the tank.

Do not allow the vehicle to remain in extreme temperatures for long periods without being driven or being plugged in.



Climate Control Buttons

1. Temperature Control
2. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats
3. Defrost
4. Climate
5. Auto (Automatic Operation)
6. Rear Window Demister
7. Manual Fan Control



Climate Touch Screen Controls

1. Driver and Passenger Auto Heated Seats
2. Air Delivery Mode Controls
3. Auto Recirculation
4. Manual Recirculation
5. Outside Air Temperature Display
6. Climate Modes
7. Climate Power Gauge
8. Manual Fan Control
9. Temperature Setting Display
10. Air Conditioning Indicator
11. Heat Status Indicator

Climate Control Touch Screen

The climate mode, fan, air delivery, recirculation, and auto heated seats are controlled by pressing the CLIMATE button on the centre stack and viewing information in the centre stack display.

Climate Mode Operation

There are three climate mode settings: Fan Only, ECO, and Comfort. These settings adjust the impact the climate control system has on the vehicle's electric range or fuel economy.

To select a climate mode:

1. Press CLIMATE on the centre stack.
2. Press the climate mode button on the touch screen. The climate mode will be lit.

Fan Only Mode (☼ / ⧖ /MIN): The air conditioning and electric heat are turned off. As long as ⧖ is not selected, the climate control settings

may not have a noticeable effect on the vehicle electric range and fuel economy.

When in Fan Only mode, the AUTO indicator light will be off. When AUTO is selected in Fan Only mode, the mode will change to either ECO or Comfort.

When in Fan Only mode, the air conditioning system may turn on automatically if the high voltage battery is being cooled. The climate control system could blow cold air. This is normal. To prevent cold air from blowing into the interior, turn off the fan control and select the vent mode and manual recirculation mode, and close the air vents.

When in Fan Only mode, if Auto Demist is enabled, the air conditioning and electric heat may turn on when high humidity conditions exist. See “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47* for more information on the Auto Demist selection. The air conditioning may also run if is selected.

ECO Mode (/ /ECO): The air conditioning and electric heat are controlled to balance comfort with fuel economy. As long as is not selected, the vehicle electric range or fuel economy will decrease less than in Comfort mode, but will result in moderate comfort.

Comfort Mode (/ /MAX): The air conditioning and electric heat are controlled to reach the best comfort level based on the temperature setting selected. In this mode, vehicle electric range or fuel economy will decrease depending on the amount of energy required to reach the best comfort levels.



Climate Power Gauge

When the climate mode is changed, the Climate Power gauge displays the impact that the changes have on energy use. The higher the reading, the more energy is being used.



Air Conditioning/Heat Status Indicators

The air conditioning/heat status displays when the air conditioning or electric heat is being used.

The air conditioning and electric heat could be on at the same time when dehumidifying is required in ECO or Comfort modes.

In Fan Only mode, occasionally the air conditioning and/or heating status will be on if the Auto Demist function is enabled and high humidity is detected. See “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*, for details on enabling or disabling the Auto Demist function.

The air conditioning may also run if is selected, regardless of the climate mode.

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery mode, and recirculation to heat or cool the vehicle to the selected temperature.

When the AUTO indicator light is on, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode, fan speed, or recirculation setting is adjusted, the AUTO indicator turns off and the selected settings display.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. An initial setting of 23°C is recommended. Allow the system time to stabilise. Adjust the temperature as needed.

▲ / ▼ (Temperature Control): Press to increase or decrease the temperature.

Auto Demist: The system monitors high humidity inside the vehicle. When detected, the system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner or the heater. The fan speed may slightly increase to help prevent fogging. When high humidity is no longer detected, the system will return to its prior operation. To turn Auto Demist off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

Manual Operation

(Fan Control): Press the fan control buttons or the touch screen fan control, to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan speed setting displays. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation. To turn the fan or climate control system off, press the fan down button repeatedly.

If the fan is manually turned off while in ECO or Comfort mode, the display will automatically change to Fan Only mode. When the fan is turned back on either by manually increasing fan speed or pressing the AUTO button, the climate mode will revert back to ECO or Comfort mode.

Air Delivery Mode Control: Press CLIMATE to select the Climate touch screen. Press the air delivery mode touch screen button to change the direction of the airflow. The selected air delivery mode button is lit. Pressing any of the air delivery buttons cancels automatic

air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets.

(Demist): Air is directed to the windscreen and floor outlets to clear the windows of fog or moisture.

(Defrost): Air is directed to the windscreen. The windscreen is cleared of mist or frost more quickly. Selecting will disable automatic control and the AUTO button indicator will not be lit.

Select again to return to the previous climate settings.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen before defrosting.

If is selected in Fan Only or ECO mode, air conditioning or electric heat may turn on and have a noticeable effect on vehicle electric range and fuel economy.

AUTO (Auto Recirculation): Press to allow the system to automatically choose the air supply mode for best comfort, efficiency, and defogging. Air is recirculated or outside air is pulled into the vehicle. The touch screen button is lit.

(Manual Recirculation): Press to recirculate air inside the vehicle; press it again to select outside air. When selected, the touch screen button lights up to indicate that air is being recirculated. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or prevent outside air and odours from entering.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO or AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

or (Manual Heated Seats): The controls are on the centre stack. To operate, the vehicle must be on.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback. For more information, see *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5*.

AUTO or AUTO (Auto Heated Seats): The controls are on the touch screen on the centre stack.

Press the touch screen AUTO or AUTO button. The button colour will change to green when this feature is on. When the vehicle is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature. The active high, medium, low, or off heated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated seat button lights on the centre stack. Use the touch screen buttons or the manual heated seat buttons on the centre stack to turn auto-heated seats off. For more information, see *Heated Front Seats on page 3-5*.

Rear Window Demister

(Rear Window Demister): Press to turn the rear window demister on or off.

The rear window demister turns off automatically after about five minutes. If turned on again, it runs for about five minutes before turning off. The demister can also be turned off by turning the vehicle off.

The heated outside rearview mirrors turn on when the rear window demister button is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors on page 2-15*.

⚠ Caution

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windscreen and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window demister grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Remote Start: For vehicles with this feature, the climate control system may be started by using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. The climate control system will default to an appropriate heating or cooling mode. See *Remote Start on page 2-6*.

The rear window demister turns on if it is cold outside.

Compressor

The vehicle has an electric powered air conditioning compressor. This allows for continuous air conditioning and/or high voltage battery cooling operation, without running the engine.

The compressor operating speed is not tied to the engine speed, so some noise may be heard from the compressor, especially when air conditioning use is high and the engine has turned off. This is normal.

Sensors

Solar Sensor

The solar sensor is located on top of the instrument panel, near the windscreen, where it monitors solar intensity.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Humidity Sensor

The humidity sensor is near the base of the inside rear view mirror. The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature and recirculation for best comfort.

Outside Air Temperature Sensor

The outside air temperature sensor is located behind the front grille of the vehicle. The vehicle uses the sensor information to display outside air temperature. The climate control system uses the information to adjust the climate system operation.

Air Vents

Use the slats on the air vents to change the direction of the airflow.

Use the thumbwheels near each vent to open and close off the airflow.

⚠ Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Operation Tips

- Keep all outlets open whenever possible for best system performance.
- Keep the path under all seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved bonnet deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving for Better Energy Efficiency 9-2
Distracted Driving 9-4
Defensive Driving 9-5
Control of a Vehicle 9-5
Braking 9-5
Steering 9-5
Loss of Control 9-6
Driving on Wet Roads 9-7
Highway Hypnosis 9-8
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-8
Winter Driving 9-8
If the Vehicle Is Stuck 9-10

Starting and Operating
New vehicle running-in 9-11
Power Button 9-11
Starting and Stopping the Vehicle 9-12
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-14
Shifting Into Park 9-14
Shifting out of Park 9-15
Parking On Flammable Surfaces 9-16

Electric Vehicle Operating Modes
System Operation 9-16
Electric Mode 9-16
Extended Range Mode 9-17
Driver Mode 9-17
Out of Fuel/Engine Unavailable 9-19
Maintenance Modes 9-19

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 9-21
Running the Vehicle While Parked 9-22

Electric Drive Unit
Electric Drive Unit 9-22

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-24
Electric Parking Brake 9-25
Regenerative Braking 9-27

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 9-27

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 9-30

Driver Assistance Systems
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 9-32
Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-34
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-37
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 9-39

Charging
Plug-In Charging 9-41
Delayed Charging Override 9-43
Charging Status Feedback 9-44
Charge Cord 9-46
Electrical Requirements for Battery Charging 9-48

Fuel
Fuel 9-49
Fuel Additives 9-49
Filling the Tank 9-50
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 9-50

Towing
General Towing Information 9-51

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-51

Driving Information

Driving for Better Energy Efficiency

Use the following tips to help maximise energy efficiency and range.

In colder temperatures, while these efficiency tips will help, the electric vehicle driving range may be lower due to higher energy usage.

Driving Style

Efficiency Gauge (Instrument Cluster)

The ball indicator should be kept green and in the centre of the gauge.

Inefficient acceleration is indicated when the ball turns yellow and travels above the centre of the gauge.

Aggressive braking is indicated when the ball turns yellow and travels below the centre of the gauge.

Acceleration/Braking/Coasting

Avoid unnecessary rapid accelerations and decelerations.

Electric range is maximised at 80 km/h and below. Higher speeds use more energy and can significantly reduce electric range.

Use cruise control when appropriate.

Plan ahead for decelerations and coast whenever possible. For example, do not rush to traffic signals.

Do not shift to N (Neutral) to coast. The vehicle recovers energy while coasting and braking in D (Drive) or L (Low).

Drive Mode and PRNDL Selection

Use Normal Mode when possible.

Sport Mode provides more responsive acceleration than Normal Mode but can reduce efficiency.

Use Hold Mode on a trip where all or most of the electric charge will be depleted. Use Hold Mode mainly during highway or high-speed driving to maximise both EV miles and fuel efficiency.

Use L (Low) in heavy stop-and-go traffic or when travelling downhill. L (Low) requires less brake pedal application and provides a controlled, efficient way to slow the vehicle down.

Climate Setting

Using the heat and air conditioning systems decreases the energy available for electric driving.

Optimal energy efficiency is achieved with the heat, air conditioning, and fan turned off.

Less energy is used at low fan speeds. When using the fan:

- Fan Only is the most energy efficient climate setting as long as  is not selected.
- ECO is for moderate air conditioning and heater operation and is the next most energy efficient setting as long as  is not selected.
- Comfort provides the most comfort but is the least energy efficient.

Use the auto heated seat feature instead of climate settings. Heating the seat uses less energy than heating the vehicle interior.

Use remote start to heat or cool the interior when the vehicle is plugged in to maximise the electric range by utilising electricity from the electrical socket.

Engine Assisted Heating operation, if equipped, can be personalised. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

In hot weather, avoid parking in direct sunlight or use sunshades inside the vehicle.

Turn off the front and rear window demist/defrost when they are no longer needed.

Avoid driving with the windows open at highway speeds.

Vehicle Charging/Maintenance

Charging

Keep the vehicle plugged in, even when fully charged, to keep the battery temperature ready for the next drive. This is important when outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold.

Maintenance

Always keep the tyres properly inflated and the wheels properly aligned.

The weight of excess cargo in the vehicle affects efficiency and range. Avoid carrying more than is needed.

If fuel is not regularly used, consider keeping the fuel tank only one-third full. Excess fuel weight impacts efficiency and range.

Use unleaded petrol of premium 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher.

Avoid unnecessary use of electrical accessories. Power used for functions other than propelling the vehicle will reduce EV range.

Distracted Driving

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, always keep your eyes on the road, hands on the wheel, and mind on the drive.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.
- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favourite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings. Program all trip information into any navigation device prior to driving.
- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to tend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a mobile phone.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Refer to the infotainment section for more information on using that system, including pairing and using a mobile phone.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear the seat belt. See *Seat belts on page 3-9*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, cyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h travels 20 m, which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If propulsion is disabled while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If the brakes are pumped, the pedal could get harder to push down. If propulsion stops, there will still be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If the steering assist is used for an extended period of time, power assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Service Vehicle Messages on page 5-45*.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

Cornering Tips

- Take corners at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a corner.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the corner.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the corner before accelerating gently into the straight section of road.

Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- The Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

Loss of Control

Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid — wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid — too much speed or steering in a curve causes tyres to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid — too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognise warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tyres to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ Danger

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police or emergency services warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tyres so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windscreen wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windscreen washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tyres with proper tread depth. See *Tyres on page 10-37*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park the vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep the interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving - scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rear view mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tyres, cooling system, and electric drive unit.
- Keep the vehicle in gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ Warning

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the vehicle turned off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down the vehicle and could become too hot. Hot brakes may not be able to slow the vehicle enough to maintain speed and control. You could crash. Always have the vehicle running and in gear (preferably LOW range) when going downhill. This will allow the electric drive unit to assist in slowing and maintaining speed.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the centre of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long gradients, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tyres and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 0°C when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tyres slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tyres even more.

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering manoeuvres and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use roadside assistance. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ Danger

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of the vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-21*.

To conserve energy, run the vehicle for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the vehicle off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, start the vehicle. The engine may start to charge the 12-volt battery. Turn off unnecessary accessories to conserve energy.

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

The Traction Control System (TCS) must be turned off by pressing the TCS/ESC button. Traction control is not completely off, but will only engage if the manoeuvre can cause damage to the electric drive unit.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle's tyres spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h.

Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

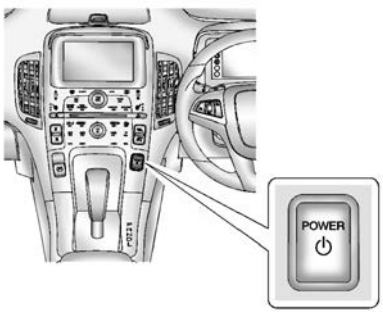
Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. The Traction Control System prevents the tyres from spinning at high speeds. To prevent electric drive unit wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the electric drive unit is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-63*.

Starting and Operating

New vehicle running-in

The vehicle does not require a break-in period. Vehicle break-in is performed during manufacturing.

Power Button



The vehicle has an electronic pushbutton start. The POWER ⏻ button light flashes when the driver door is opened and the vehicle is not on. The flashing light will eventually time out. The POWER ⏻ button light is on steady when in ON/RUN power mode. When the vehicle is turned off, the POWER ⏻ button light will turn off.

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the vehicle will not start, place the RKE transmitter in the transmitter slot. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

ON/RUN: This position is for starting and driving. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the POWER ⏻ button once will place the vehicle in ON/RUN. When the READY light is on in the instrument cluster, the vehicle is ready to be driven. This could take up to 15 seconds at extremely cold temperatures. See *Vehicle Ready Light on page 5-21*. The engine will only start if needed. If the vehicle did not start, the instrument cluster will display a screen with inactive fuel and battery gauges. See *Starting and Stopping the Vehicle on page 9-12*.

Service Only Mode

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the POWER ⏻ button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Only Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The propulsion system will not start in Service Only Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

⚠ Caution

Service Only Mode will discharge the 12-volt battery. Do not use Service Only Mode for an extended period, or the vehicle may not start.

STOPPING THE VEHICLE/OFF:
To turn the vehicle off, press the POWER ⏻ button with the vehicle in P (Park). Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active until the driver door is opened. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-14*. When turning off the vehicle, if the vehicle is not in P (Park), the vehicle will go to ACC/ACCESSORY and display the message SHIFT TO PARK in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Electric Drive Unit Messages on page 5-41*.

The vehicle may have an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the vehicle is switched to off and either front door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock may not release with the wheels turned off centre. If this happens, the vehicle may not start. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. If this does not work, the vehicle needs service.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop, shift to P (Park), and turn the vehicle off by pushing the POWER ⏻ button.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25*.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the propulsion system off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold the POWER ⏻ button for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

Starting and Stopping the Vehicle

Starting Procedure

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The propulsion system will not start in any other position.

⚠ Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving or the electric drive unit could be damaged. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ Caution

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the vehicle operates. Any resulting damage may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-51*.

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle. Press the brake pedal and push and release the POWER ⏻ button.

If the RKE transmitter is not in the vehicle or something is interfering with the transmitter, a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-42*.

If the vehicle will not start due to a low RKE transmitter battery, the vehicle can still be driven. See "Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery" in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.



A Welcome, Ready, and Good-bye audio message will be heard in the vehicle and animated on the instrument cluster when opening the driver door upon entry, when the vehicle is ready to be driven, and when the vehicle is turned off.

The instrument cluster displays an active fuel or battery gauge, along with an audio startup cue, when the vehicle is ready to be driven. This could take up to 15 seconds at extremely cold temperatures. The engine will only start if needed. If the vehicle did not start, the instrument cluster will display a screen with inactive fuel and battery gauges. See *Starting and Stopping the Vehicle on page 9-12*.

Restarting Procedure

If the vehicle must be restarted while it is still moving, move the shift lever to N (Neutral) and press the POWER ⏻ button twice without pressing the brake pedal. The propulsion system will not restart in any other position.

Computers determine when the engine needs to run. The engine may start, if required, when the propulsion system is on. Some vehicle conditions that force the engine to run:

- There are cold ambient temperatures.
- The bonnet is open or not completely latched.
- The high voltage battery has a low charge.
- The engine is needed to maintain the high voltage battery temperature.
- The engine needs to run for maintenance.

See *Maintenance Modes on page 9-19*.

A chime will sound if the driver door is opened while the vehicle is in ON/RUN. Always press the POWER ⏻ button to turn the vehicle off before exiting.

Stopping Procedure

For information on how to turn the vehicle off, see *Power Button on page 9-11*.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following features will operate for up to 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened:

- Audio System
- Accessory Power Outlets

Power windows will operate for up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened.

Shifting Into Park

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25*.
2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the vehicle off.

Leaving the Vehicle with the Propulsion System On

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the propulsion system running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the propulsion system is running. If you have left the propulsion system running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-14*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the propulsion system on, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you have moved the shift lever into P (Park), hold down the regular brake pedal. See if you can move the shift lever away from P (Park) without first pressing the shift lever button. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

Torque Lock

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the electric drive unit. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the electric drive unit into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park).

If torque lock does occur, contact your dealer.

Shifting out of Park

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be in ON/RUN, the brake pedal must be applied, and the charge cord must be unplugged.

The vehicle has an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent the vehicle from turning off unless the shift lever is in P (Park).
- Prevent moving the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the vehicle is in ON/RUN, the brake pedal is applied, and the charge cord is unplugged.

Parking the vehicle in extreme cold for several days without the charge cord connected may cause the electric drive unit to be locked in P (Park) until the propulsion system has warmed sufficiently.

The shift lock is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low charged 12-volt battery (less than 9 volts).

If the vehicle has an uncharged 12-volt battery or a 12-volt battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the 12-volt battery. See *Battery on page 10-21* or *Jump Starting on page 10-57*.

If the console shift lever cannot be moved out of P (Park):

1. Apply and maintain the regular brakes.
2. Turn the vehicle on using the POWER ⏻ button. See *Power Button on page 9-11*.
3. Let up on the shift lever and make sure the shift lever is pushed all the way into P (Park).
4. Press the shift lever button.

5. Move the shift lever into the desired gear.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from P (Park), see your dealer or a professional towing service.

Parking On Flammable Surfaces

⚠ Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Electric Vehicle Operating Modes

System Operation

This vehicle is an Extended Range Electric Vehicle (EREV). It uses an electric propulsion system to drive the vehicle at all times. Electricity is the vehicle's primary source of energy, while petrol is the secondary source.

The vehicle has two modes of operation: Electric and Extended Range. In both modes, the vehicle is propelled by its electric drive unit. It converts electrical energy into mechanical energy to drive the wheels. The vehicle's performance remains the same in either mode. See *Driving for Better Energy Efficiency on page 9-2*.

Electric Mode

In Electric Mode, the vehicle does not use fuel or produce tailpipe emissions. During this primary mode, the vehicle is powered by electrical energy stored in the high voltage battery. The vehicle can operate in this mode until the battery has reached a low charge.

There are some conditions when the battery charge is high enough to provide Electric Mode operation, but the engine still runs. They are:

- Cold ambient temperatures.
- Hot or cold high voltage battery temperatures.
- The bonnet being open or not completely closed and latched.
- Certain high voltage battery fault conditions.
- Engine Maintenance Mode or Fuel Maintenance Mode being run.

Extended Range Mode

When the vehicle reaches the end of its electric range, it switches to Extended Range Mode (ERM). In this secondary mode, electricity is produced by the fuel-powered engine. This secondary source of electric power extends the vehicle range. Operation will continue in ERM until the vehicle can be plugged in to recharge the high voltage battery and restore Electric Mode.

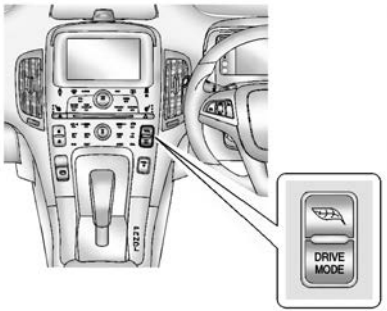
The high voltage battery will continue to provide some power and work together with the engine to provide peak performance when it is required, such as driving up a steep incline or for high acceleration manoeuvres. The battery will not be charged nor will electric vehicle range be restored by the engine.

In either Electric Mode or Extended Range Mode, when the bonnet is open, the engine will run without turning off, if the vehicle is on. The high voltage battery is neither charged nor discharged when this occurs.

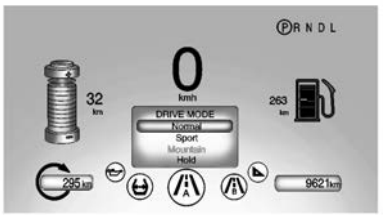
In either Electric Mode or Extended Range Mode, if there is a high voltage battery fault, the engine may run without turning off to generate needed electricity. The malfunction indicator lamp will turn on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-14*.

Driver Mode

While driving in Electric or Extended Range Mode, additional operating modes can be selected.



Press the DRIVE MODE button to display selectable drive modes in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). Continue pressing to scroll through the modes.



Highlight either the Sport or Hold Mode, then release the DRIVE MODE button. After three seconds, the new drive mode will become active.

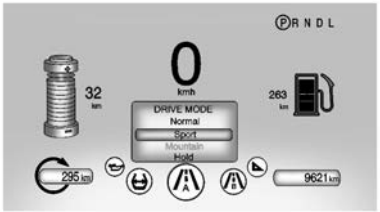
Pressing the DRIVE MODE button again will return to Normal Mode, and become active after three seconds.

At next start, the vehicle will default to Normal Mode. Drive modes can then be selected again as desired.

During some conditions, certain drive modes may be unavailable. The unavailable mode is greyed out in the DIC menu and cannot be selected.

If in Sport or Hold Mode, the mode may become unavailable and the vehicle will return to Normal Mode. The indicator light goes off and a DIC message displays. See *Propulsion Power Messages on page 5-44*.

Sport Mode



Sport Mode provides more responsive acceleration than Normal Mode, but can reduce efficiency. Use Normal Mode whenever possible.

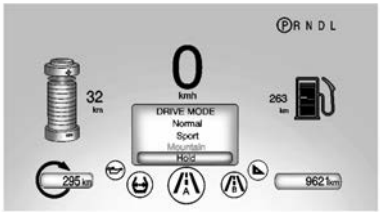
Press the DRIVE MODE button to select Sport Mode.

Press the DRIVE MODE button again to return to Normal Mode and it becomes active after three seconds.

The Sport light comes on when Sport Mode is selected. See *Sport Mode Light on page 5-18*.

Each time the vehicle is started, it will return to Normal Mode.

Hold Mode



Hold Mode is only available when the vehicle is in Electric Mode. This mode places the remaining battery charge into a reserve for the driver to use as desired. Selecting this mode transitions the vehicle to Extended Range Mode to maintain the battery charge reserve.

Upon exiting Hold Mode, the reserved battery charge becomes available again and the vehicle returns to Electric Mode.

Hold Mode will not change normal vehicle acceleration or braking performance.

Press the DRIVE MODE button to select Hold Mode.

Press the DRIVE MODE button again to return to Normal Mode and it becomes active after three seconds.

The Hold light comes on when Hold Mode is selected. See *Hold Mode Light on page 5-18*.

Each time the vehicle is started, it will return to Normal Mode.

Out of Fuel/Engine Unavailable

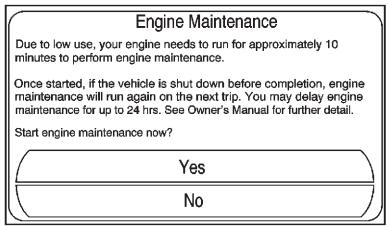
If the vehicle runs out of fuel, or the engine will not start due to a malfunction, the vehicle can continue to be driven in Electric Mode. The vehicle will have less responsive acceleration. DIC messages indicate reduced propulsion power, that the engine is not available, and the need for fuel or service.

Once the vehicle is refuelled, or the malfunction is corrected, the engine will start the next time the vehicle is turned on to perform a self test, and DIC messages will not be displayed. Once the engine starts successfully, normal operation will continue in either Electric or Extended Range Mode. The engine will stop running after the self test is completed, and based on the current mode of operation. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-42* and *Service Vehicle Messages on page 5-45*.

Maintenance Modes

Engine Maintenance Mode (EMM)

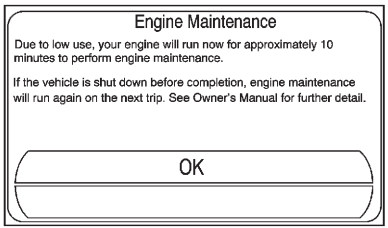
EMM runs the engine to keep it in good working condition after approximately six weeks of no or very limited engine operation. EMM will force the engine to run, even if there is a charge to power the vehicle. When EMM is needed, the EMM Request screen appears on the centre stack display at vehicle start.



If Yes is selected, EMM will begin. The engine will run for a set amount of time without turning off. During EMM, a DIC message displays to show the EMM percentage complete.

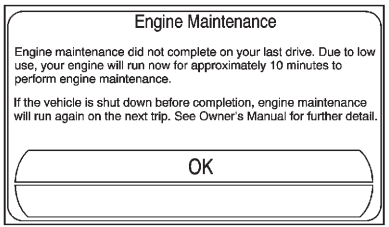
If No is selected, the EMM Request screen will appear when the vehicle is next started. The EMM request can be delayed for only one day.

If the EMM request was delayed for one day, EMM will automatically start the engine at the next vehicle start. An EMM Notification screen will appear in the centre stack display.



If the vehicle shuts off during EMM, it will restart the next time the vehicle is driven. A message displays to indicate that EMM is active.

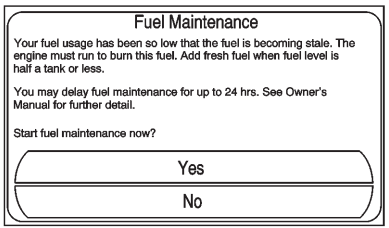
If EMM is required and the fuel level is low, EMM may eventually empty the fuel tank if fuel is not added. This will result in reduced, or no power. An adequate fuel level must be maintained in the vehicle to keep it operational. See *Propulsion Power Messages on page 5-44*.



Fuel Maintenance Mode (FMM)

FMM tracks average fuel age. Old fuel can cause engine problems. If low engine usage causes average fuel age to exceed approximately one year, FMM will run the engine to use up the old fuel. The engine will run until enough fresh fuel is added to bring the average fuel age into an acceptable range. Allowing more old fuel to be used up by FMM and adding a larger amount of fresh fuel will maximise the length of time before another fuel maintenance mode is needed. During FMM the engine may turn on and off.

When FMM is needed, the FMM Request screen appears on the centre stack display at vehicle start.

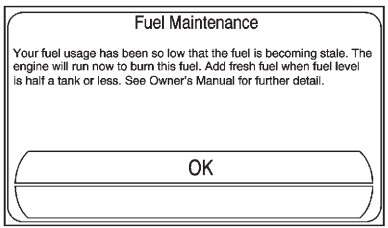


If Yes is selected, FMM will begin. FMM will automatically continue at each vehicle start until fresh fuel is added.

If No is selected, the FMM Request screen will appear when the vehicle is next started. The FMM request can be delayed for only one day.

If the FMM request was delayed for one day, FMM will start at the next vehicle start and display the FMM Notification screen on the centre stack display.

If FMM is required and the fuel level is low, FMM may eventually empty the fuel tank if fuel is not added. This will result in reduced, or no power. An adequate fuel level must be maintained in the vehicle to keep it operational. See *Propulsion Power Messages on page 5-44*.



Engine Exhaust

⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The engine is running in Extended Range Mode in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, or deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park with the engine running in Extended Range Mode in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven in Extended Range Mode with the hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1*.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-21*.

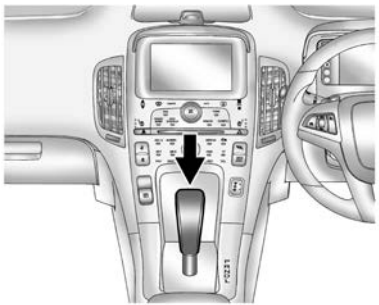
Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the propulsion system running.

If the vehicle is left with the propulsion system running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-14* and *Engine Exhaust on page 9-21*.

Electric Drive Unit

The vehicle uses an electric drive unit. The shift lever is on the console between the seats.



P (Park): This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when starting the propulsion system because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the propulsion system is running. If you have left the propulsion system running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-14*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the propulsion system. The vehicle has an electric drive unit shift lock control system. The regular brake must be fully applied first and then the shift lever button pressed before shifting from P (Park) when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever, then push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting out of Park on page 9-15*.

R (Reverse): Use this gear to reverse.

⚠ Caution

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the electric drive unit. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the electric drive unit, see *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-10*.

N (Neutral): In this position, the propulsion system does not connect with the wheels.

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If more power is needed for passing, and the vehicle is:

- Going less than 56 km/h, push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 56 km/h or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

⚠ Caution

If the vehicle seems to accelerate slowly or not respond when you go faster, and you continue to drive the vehicle that way, you could damage the electric drive unit. Have the vehicle serviced right away.

L (Low): This position reduces vehicle speed without using the brakes. You can use L (Low) on hills. It can help control vehicle speed going down steep mountain roads along with using the brakes off and on. You can use L (Low) on very steep hills, in deep snow, or in mud.

⚠ Caution

Spinning the tyres or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the electric drive unit. The repair may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tyres. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has ABS, an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When propulsion is active and the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-17*.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help the driver steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle

suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

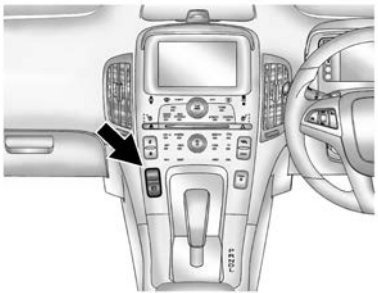
Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You might hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Electric Parking Brake



The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB). The switch is on the centre stack. The EPB can always be activated, even if the vehicle is off. To prevent draining the 12-volt battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB system when the vehicle is off.

In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

The system has a red parking brake status light and an amber parking brake warning light. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-16* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-17*. There are also parking brake-related Driver Information Centre (DIC) messages. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-40*. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the red parking brake status light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Be sure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Pull the EPB switch momentarily.

The red parking brake status light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the red parking brake status light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display. Release the EPB and try to apply it again. If the light does not come one, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the red parking brake status light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-16*.

If the amber parking brake warning light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it up. Continue to hold the switch until the red parking brake status light remains on. If the amber parking brake warning light is on, see your dealer.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held up. If the switch is held up until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Place the ignition in the ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push momentarily on the EPB switch.

The EPB is released when the red parking brake status light is off.

If the amber parking brake warning light is on, release the EPB by pushing down on the EPB switch and holding it down. Continue to hold the switch until the red parking brake status light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

⚠ Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

Regenerative Braking

Regenerative braking takes some of the energy from the moving vehicle and turns it back into electrical energy. This energy is then stored back into the high voltage battery system, contributing to increased energy efficiency.

The hydraulic disc brakes work with the regenerative braking to ensure effective braking, such as when a high braking demand is requested.

The braking system is computer controlled and blends the regenerative braking with the conventional hydraulic disc brakes to meet any requirements for deceleration. The controller interprets the braking request and uses regenerative braking, conventional hydraulic braking, or a combination of both as necessary.

Because the controller applies the hydraulic brakes through its high pressure accumulator, you may occasionally hear the motor-driven pump when it recharges the system. This is normal.

See *Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators on page 5-5* and *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37*. In the event of a controller problem, the brake pedal may be harder to push and the stopping distance may be longer.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and an Electronic Stability Control system called StabiliTrak. These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are slipping or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

StabiliTrak activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually travelling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure to any of the vehicle wheel brakes to help assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

If cruise control is being used and traction control or StabiliTrak begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-10* and “Turning the Systems Off and On” later in this section.



The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when StabiliTrak is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), and comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Drive the vehicle. If comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

Turning the Systems Off and On



The button for TCS and StabiliTrak is on the overhead console.

⚠ Caution

Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

To turn off only TCS, press and release the button. The Traction Off Light displays in the instrument cluster. The appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-44*. To turn TCS on again, press and release the button. The Traction Off Light displayed in the instrument cluster will turn off.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when the button is pressed, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold the button until the Traction Off Light and StabiliTrak Off Light come on and stay on in the instrument cluster. The appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-44*. To turn TCS and StabiliTrak on again, press and release the button. The Traction Off Light and StabiliTrak Off Light in the instrument cluster turn off.

Adding accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

Cruise Control

The cruise control lets the vehicle maintain a speed of about 40 km/h or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 40 km/h.

With the Traction Control System (TCS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC), the system may begin to limit wheel spin while you are using cruise control. If this happens, the cruise control will automatically disengage. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control on page 9-27*. If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-32*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, the cruise control can be turned back on.

If the brakes are applied, the cruise control shuts off.



(On/Off): Press to turn the cruise control system on and off. An indicator light will turn on or off in the instrument cluster.

(Cancel): Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

RES/+ (Resume/Accel): Move the thumbwheel up briefly to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or hold upwards to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

SET/− (Set/Coast): Move the thumbwheel down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease speed.

Setting Cruise Control

If the cruise button is on when not in use, it could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control button off when cruise is not being used.

To set a speed:

1. Press the button to turn the cruise system on.
2. Get up to the speed desired.
3. Move the thumbwheel down and release it. The desired set speed briefly appears in the instrument cluster.
4. Remove foot from the accelerator pedal.

When the brakes are applied, the cruise control shuts off.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory. Once the vehicle speed is about 40 km/h or greater, move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ briefly and then release it. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ and hold it until the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed, then release it.
- To increase the speed in small amounts, move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ briefly and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the thumbwheel toward SET/− and hold until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, move the thumbwheel toward SET/− briefly. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle slows down to the previous set cruise control speed. While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise control, briefly moving the thumbwheel toward SET– will result in cruise control set to the current vehicle speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to maintain the vehicle speed. When the brakes are applied the cruise control is disengaged.

Ending Cruise Control

There are three ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal; when cruise control disengages, the indicator light will not be lit.
- Press .

- Press to turn the cruise control system off completely. The cruise control cannot be resumed.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory by pressing or if the vehicle is turned off.

Driver Assistance Systems

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

The Forward Collision Alert (FCA) system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a visual alert and beeps when approaching a vehicle directly ahead too quickly. FCA also provides a visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

The forward-looking FCA camera sensor is on the windscreen ahead of the rear view mirror. FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m and operates at speeds above 40 km/h.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 9-5*.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead



The green vehicle ahead indicator will appear when a vehicle is detected ahead. Whenever this indicator does not appear, FCA will not respond. The indicator may disappear on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, or due to poor visibility. The FCA system will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

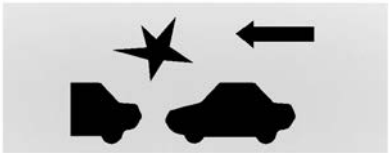
⚠ Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

Tailgating Alert

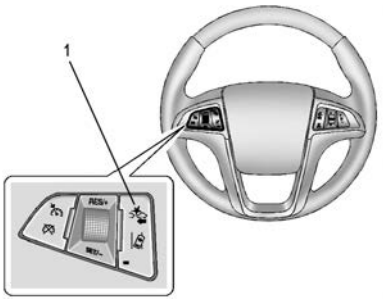
The vehicle ahead indicator will change to amber if following the vehicle ahead much too close.

Collision Alert



When your vehicle approaches another vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will appear and sound several beeps. When this occurs, the brake system prepares for driver braking to occur more rapidly. Continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates.

Selecting the Alert Timing



The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press the COLLISION ALERT button (1) to set the alert timing to far, medium, near or off. The first button press shows the current control setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Following Distance Indication

The following distance to a moving vehicle in front is indicated in seconds on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37*. The minimum distance indicated is 0.5 seconds away. If there is no vehicle detected ahead, or vehicle ahead is out of sensor range, dashes will be displayed.

Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may sometimes set unnecessary alerts to turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Other Messages

There are messages that may appear on the Driver Information Centre (DIC) in the instrument cluster to provide information about FCA. See *Object Detection System Messages on page 5-43*.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, clean the outside of the windscreen area in front of the camera sensor before considering taking the vehicle in for service.

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

The Ultrasonic Front and Rear Parking Assist (UFRPA) system assists the driver with parking and avoiding objects. At speeds less than 8 km/h, the system detects objects up to 2.5 m behind the vehicle, and at least 25 cm off the ground. The UFRPA system detects objects up to 1.2 m in front of the

vehicle, and at least 25 cm off the ground. This distance may be less during warmer or humid weather.

⚠ Warning

The parking assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 8 km/h. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or reversing.

How the System Works

When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse) the park assist sensors are automatically turned on. After the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), the Rear Parking Assist is turned off and the Front Parking Assist stays on until the vehicle is above a speed of 8 km/h. For Front Parking Assist to be active again without shifting into R (Reverse), the park assist button in the overhead console must be pressed. See “Turning the System On and Off” later in this section.

When the vehicle is in N (Neutral), the system may be active. The Parking Assist system may need to be turned off during a car wash to avoid repeating alerts. See “Turning the System On and Off” later in this section to turn the system off.

For vehicles with UFRPA, high-toned beeps from the front speakers are for objects detected near the front bumper. Low-toned beeps from the rear speakers are for objects detected near the rear bumper. The interval between the beeps becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm the beeping is a continuous tone for five seconds.

Objects Detected by Both the Front and Rear Sensors

In general, if objects are detected at the same time near both the front and rear bumpers while backing up, the beeps only sound to indicate that objects are close to the rear bumper.

However, if an object comes within 0.3 m of the front bumper while the vehicle is backing up and at the same time there is another object further than 0.3 m from the rear bumper, then the beeps only sound to indicate the object that is closer to the front bumper.

Turning the System On and Off

The system can be turned on and off by pressing the park assist button located in the overhead console.



The indicator light next to the park assist button lights up when the system is active.

When the system is turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled, PARK ASSIST OFF displays on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The message disappears after a short period of time.

Turn the system off when towing a trailer.

The system defaults to the on setting each time the vehicle is started.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The following messages may be displayed on the DIC:

SERVICE PARKING ASSIST: If this message occurs, check the following conditions:

- The ultrasonic sensors are not clean. Keep the vehicle's bumpers free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care on page 10-66*.
- The park assist sensors are covered by frost or ice. Frost or ice can form around and behind the sensors and may not always be seen; this can occur after washing the vehicle in cold weather. The message may not clear until the frost or ice has melted.

If the above conditions do not exist, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

PARK ASSIST OFF: If the system does not activate due to a temporary condition, the message displays on the DIC. This can occur under the following conditions:

- The driver has disabled the system.
- An object was hanging out of the hatch during the last drive cycle. Once the object is removed, the system will return to normal operation.
- An object or cover is attached to the front of the vehicle.
- The bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.
- Other conditions, such as vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck, are affecting system performance.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

Read this entire section before using the Rear Vision Camera (RVC).

The RVC system can assist the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

The RVC system does not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or any other object located outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Perceived distances may be different from actual distances. Do not reverse the vehicle using only the RVC screen, during longer, higher speed reversing manoeuvres, or where there could be cross traffic. Failure to use proper care

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

before reversing may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Always check behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

How the System Works

When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse), the image of the area behind the vehicle appears in the centre stack display. The previous screen displays when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) after approximately 10 seconds.

To see the previous screen sooner, do one of the following:

- Press a button on the infotainment system.
- Shift into P (Park).
- Reach a vehicle speed of 8 km/h.

Symbols

The navigation system may have a feature that lets the driver view symbols on the navigation screen while using the RVC. The Ultrasonic Front and Rear Parking Assist (UFRPA) or Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system must not be disabled to use the caution symbols. The error message REAR PARKING ASSIST SYMBOLS UNAVAILABLE may display if parking assist has been disabled and the symbols have been turned on. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-34*.

The symbols appear and may cover an object when viewing the navigation screen when an object is detected by the parking assist system.

To turn the symbols on or off:

1. Shift into P (Park).
2. Press the CONFIG button on the centre stack.
3. Select Display Settings.

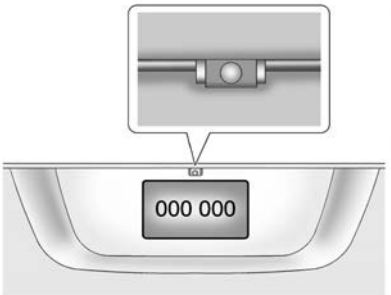
4. Select Rear Camera Options.
5. Select Symbols. When a checkmark appears next to Symbols, symbols will appear.

Rear Vision Camera Error Messages

SERVICE REAR VISION CAMERA SYSTEM: If this message appears in the centre stack display, the system may need service.

If any other problem occurs or if a problem persists, see your dealer.

Rear Vision Camera Location

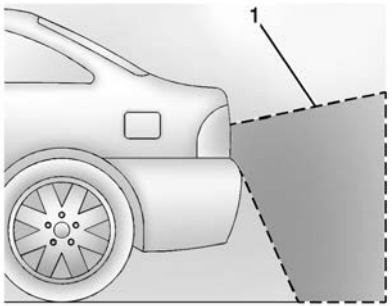


The RVC is located above the number plate.

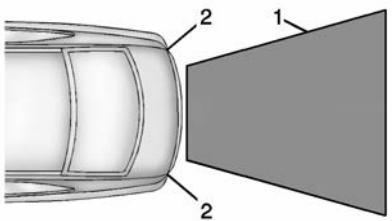
The area displayed by the camera is limited.

It does not display objects that are close to either corner or under the bumper and can vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear.

The following illustrations show the field of view that the camera provides.



1. View displayed by the camera.



1. View displayed by the camera.

2. Corner of the rear bumper.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

The RVC system may not work properly or display a clear image if:

- The RVC is turned off. See “Turning the Rear Vision Camera System On or Off” earlier in this section.
- It is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlamps is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else has built up on the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The back of the vehicle was in an accident. The position and mounting angle of the camera can change or the camera can be affected. Be sure to have the camera and its position and mounting angle checked at your dealer.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

Read the entire section before using this feature.

⚠ Warning

The LDW system is an aid to help the vehicle stay in the driving lane. It does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under bad weather conditions or if the windscreen is dirty.
- Detect lane markings and will not detect road edges.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Warn that the vehicle is crossing a lane marking if the system does not detect the lane marking.

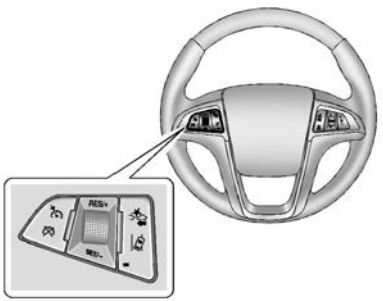
If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marker. Even with LDW, always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windscreen clean and do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

When the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking and is travelling greater than 56 km/h, the LDW indicator will flash and three beeps will be sounded from the left or right side, depending on the lane

departure direction. LDW will not warn if the turn signal is on or if a sharp manoeuvre is made.

How the System Works

The LDW camera sensor is on the windscreen ahead of the rear view mirror.



To turn LDW on and off, press the LANE DEPART button on the steering wheel. The control indicator will light when LDW is on.



When the vehicle is started, the LDW indicator on the instrument panel will come on briefly.

If LDW is on, the LDW indicator will appear green if the vehicle is travelling greater than 56 km/h and the system detects a left or right lane marking. If the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the turn signal, this indicator will change to amber and flash. In addition, three beeps will be sounded from the left or right side, depending on the lane departure direction.

To change the volume of the warning chime, see “Chime Volume” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47* for more information.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

If the LDW symbol does not appear:

- The lane markings on the road may not be seen.
- The camera sensor may be blocked by dirt, snow or ice.
- The windscreen may be damaged.
- The weather may be limiting visibility.

This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service. Clean the windscreen.

⚠ Warning

LDW does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects the lane markings. LDW may not detect the lane markings if the camera sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

also not detect a lane on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair.

LDW warnings may occasionally occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation, the vehicle does not need service.

LDW Messages

FRONT CAMERA BLOCKED, CLEAN WINDSCREEN: This message may appear because the front camera is blocked and cannot operate properly. It may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray.

LANE DEPARTURE SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE: This message may appear if LDW does not activate due to a temporary condition.

SERVICE FRONT CAMERA: This message may appear to indicate that LDW is not working properly. If this message remains on after continued driving, the system needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

Charging

Plug-In Charging

This section explains the process for charging the vehicle's high voltage battery. Do not allow the vehicle to remain in temperature extremes for long periods without being driven or plugged in. It is recommended that the vehicle be plugged in when temperatures are below 0°C and above 32°C to maximise high voltage battery life.

When using a 230-volt AC electrical outlet, it will take approximately six hours to charge the vehicle with the 10 amp AC current setting, or 11 hours using the default 6 amp AC current setting. When using a 230-volt charging station with 16 amp AC current capability, it will take approximately four hours to charge the vehicle. Charge times will vary with outside temperature.

The charging system may run fans and pumps that result in sounds from the vehicle while it is turned off. Additional unexpected clicking sounds may be caused by the electrical devices used while charging.

While the charge cord is plugged into the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be driven.

Charging

Start Charge

1. Make sure the vehicle is parked and turned off.
2. Push the rearward edge of the charge port door in and release to open the door.

   In cold weather conditions, ice may form around the charge port door. Remove ice from the area before attempting to open or close the charge port door.



3. Open the rear hatch, lift the load support floor covering, and remove the charge cord. It is located near the tyre sealant and compressor kit. Pull up on the charge cord handle to release. The vehicle plug is stored as shown.
4. Plug the charge cord into the electrical outlet. Verify that the charge cord status indicators are both green. See *Charge Cord on page 9-46*. Select the appropriate charge level. On some models, charge level selection can be made using the Select Charge Level Preference screen on the centre stack. See “Charge Level Selection” under *Charging on page 5-25*. On some models, charge level selection can be made using the charge level button on the charge cord. See “Charge Level Button” under *Charge Cord on page 9-46*.



5. Plug in the vehicle plug of the charge cord into the charge port on the vehicle. Verify that the charging status indicator illuminates on top of the instrument panel and a horn chirp occurs. See *Charging Status Feedback on page 9-44*.
6. To arm the charge cord theft alert, lock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter. To disable this feature, see “Charge Cord Theft Alert” in *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*.

End Charge

1. Unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter to disarm the charge cord theft alert.



2. Unplug the vehicle plug of the charge cord from the vehicle.
3. Close the charge port door by pressing firmly on the rearward edge of the door surface.
4. Unplug the charge cord from the electrical outlet.
5. Place the charge cord into the storage compartment.

Delayed Charging Override

To temporarily override a delayed charge event, unplug the charge cord from the charge port and then plug it back in within five seconds. A single horn chirp will sound and charging will begin immediately.

To cancel a temporary override, unplug the charge cord, wait for 10 seconds, and then plug the charge cord back in. A double horn chirp will sound and charging will be delayed.

See *Charging on page 5-25* for advanced charge scheduling options.

Charging Status Feedback



The vehicle has a Charging Status Indicator (CSI) at the centre of the instrument panel near the windscreen. When the vehicle is plugged in and the vehicle power is off, the CSI indicates the following:

- Solid Green – Vehicle is plugged in. Battery is not fully charged. Battery is charging.
- Long Flashing Green – Vehicle is plugged in. Battery is not fully charged. Battery charging is delayed.
- Short Flashing Green – Vehicle is plugged in. Battery is fully charged.
- Solid Yellow – Vehicle is plugged in. It is normal for the CSI to turn yellow for a few seconds after plugging in a compatible charge cord. Otherwise, the charging system has detected a fault and will not charge the battery. See “Charge Cord Status Indicators” in the charge cord user manual.

The system may be thermally conditioning the battery during any of the states above, requiring electrical energy to be transferred to the vehicle.

If the vehicle is plugged in and vehicle power is on, the CSI will be on solid green. The same is true during a remote start if the vehicle is plugged in.

If the vehicle is plugged in and the CSI is off, a charging fault has been detected. See “Charge Cord Status Indicators” in the charge cord user manual.

This chart indicates vehicle feedback when the charge cord is plugged in.

Charging Status Indicator	Sound	Action/Reason
Solid Green	One horn chirp	Charging has begun.
Long Flashing Green	Two horn chirps	Charging is delayed by Programmable Charging. Charging will begin later. See “Programmable Charging” in *Charging on page 5-25*.
Short Flashing Green	None	Charging is complete.
Yellow (Upon Plug-in)	None	Charge cord is okay and vehicle is not yet charging.
Yellow (For Extended Time Period after Plug-in)	None	Charge cord is okay, but vehicle is not charging. See “Charge Cord Status Indicator” in the charge cord user manual.
Solid Green or Long Flashing Green	Four horn chirps	Insufficient time to fully charge by departure time.
None (Upon Plug-in)	None	Charge cord connection should be checked.
None (After Green or Yellow CSI Indication Observed)	None	Charge cord connection should be checked.

Charging Status Indicator	Sound	Action/Reason
None	Repeated horn chirps To disable this feature, see “Charge Power Loss Alert” in *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-47*. To terminate this alert, do one of the following: • Unplug the charge cord. • Press on the RKE. • Press and hold on the RKE, then press again to stop the panic alarm. • Press the horn pad.	Electricity was interrupted before charging was complete.

Charge Cord

A portable charge cord used to charge the vehicle high voltage battery is stored under the load support floor covering in the rear cargo area.

Important Information About Portable Electric Vehicle Charging

- Charging an electric vehicle can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug in to any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions, and protection devices) for heavy-duty service at a 10 amp continuous load.

- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over time, making them unsuitable for electric vehicle charging.
- Check the electrical outlet/plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet/plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.
- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weather-proof while in use.
- Mount the charging cord to reduce strain on the electrical outlet/plug.

⚠ Warning

Improper use of portable electric vehicle charge cords may cause a fire, electrical shock, or burns, and may result in damage to property, serious injury, or death.

- Do not use extension cords, multi-outlet power strips, splitters, grounding adaptors, surge protectors, or similar devices.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is worn or damaged, or one that will not hold the plug firmly in place.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is not properly grounded.
- Do not use an electrical outlet that is on a circuit with other electrical loads.

See the charge cord user guide.

Charge Cord Status Indicators

See “Charge Cord Status Indicators” in the charge cord user guide.

Charge Level Selection

Charge level selection can be made using the Select Charge Level Preference screen on the centre stack. See “Charge Level Selection” under *Charging on page 5-25*.

⚠ Warning

Using a charge level that exceeds the electrical circuit or electrical socket capacity may start a fire or damage the electrical circuit. Use the lowest charge level until a qualified electrician inspects your electrical circuit capacity. Use the lowest charge level if the electrical circuit or electrical socket capacity is not known.

Electrical Requirements for Battery Charging

The AC outlet must have a grounded, dedicated wall outlet. That means there should be no other major appliances connected to the same circuit. If it is not a dedicated circuit, the current rating of the outlet circuit breaker could be exceeded and cause it to trip or open. The vehicle can be charged in the reduced level mode. See “Charge Level Selection” under *Charging on page 5-25*. Reduced level mode allows a non-dedicated circuit to be used but increases the charging time.

This vehicle is capable of being charged with standard vehicle charging equipment complying with:

- SAE J1772
- SAE J2847–2
- IEC 61851-1
- IEC 61851-22
- IEC 61851-23
- IEC 61851-24
- IEC 62196-1
- IEC 62196-2
- IEC 62196-3
- ISO 15118

The following are the minimum continuous duty rating requirements for circuits used to charge this vehicle:

- 230 V/10 amp

Charging equipment with a rating of at least 230 V/16 amp will provide the fastest charging time to recharge the high voltage battery. 230 V/32 amp circuits provide flexibility for future vehicle charging needs. Always follow your charging equipment installation instructions. Contact your dealer for more information.

⚠ Caution

Do not use portable or stationary backup generating equipment to charge the vehicle. This may cause damage to the vehicle's charging system. Only charge the vehicle from utility supplied power.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle, keeps the engine clean, and maintains optimum vehicle performance.

Use premium unleaded petrol with a posted rating of 95 RON or higher. If the rating is less than 95 RON, you could damage the engine. If heavy knocking is heard when using petrol rated at 95 RON or higher, the engine needs service.

Fuel Additives

Petrol should contain detergent additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming. Clean fuel injectors and intake valves will allow the emission control system to work properly.

Petrol containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, may be available in your area. However, fuels containing more than 10% ethanol, such as E85 (85% ethanol), or more than 15% MTBE (an ether) should not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2* for more information.

⚠ Caution

This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage may not be covered under the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Some petrol can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy petrol whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such petrol. Fuels containing MMT can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer for service.

Filling the Tank

The fuel system on this vehicle requires a refuelling process to control evaporative emissions. To refuel the vehicle:



1. Press the fuel door button on the driver door for one second. A WAIT TO REFUEL message displays on the Driver Information Centre.



2. When the READY TO REFUEL message displays, the fuel door on the driver side will unlock. Push the rearward edge of the fuel door in and release to open the door.
3. Turn the fuel cap anticlockwise to remove. While refuelling, hang the fuel cap tether from the hook on the inside of the fuel door. Complete refuelling within 30 minutes of pressing the fuel door button on the passenger door. If refuelling takes more than 30 minutes, press the fuel door button again.
4. After refuelling, reinstall the fuel cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks. Close the fuel door.

Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care on page 10-66*.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ Warning

Filling a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle can cause fuel vapours that can ignite either by static electricity or other means. You or others could be badly burnt and the vehicle could be damaged. Always:

- Use approved fuel containers.
- Remove container from vehicle or boot before filling.
- Place container on the ground.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Place the nozzle inside the fill opening of the container before dispensing fuel, and keep it in contact with the fill opening until filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.

Towing

General Towing Information

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer or another vehicle.

For information on towing a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-63*.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

⚠ Caution

Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

When adding electrical equipment, it should only be connected using the accessory power outlets. The maximum power that can be supplied by one accessory power outlet or spread across all three is 200 watts or 15 amps. Exceeding 200 watts or 15 amps may cause erratic vehicle operation. See *Power Outlets on page 5-4*.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 10-2
Accessories and Modifications 10-2
Lifting the Vehicle 10-2

Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work 10-5
Bonnet 10-5
Engine Compartment Overview 10-7
Engine Oil 10-8
Engine Oil Life System 10-11
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 10-12
Cooling System (High Voltage Battery) 10-13
Cooling System (Power Electronics and Charger Modules) 10-14
Cooling System (Engine) 10-15
Engine Coolant 10-15
Engine Overheating 10-18
Washer Fluid 10-18
Brakes 10-19
Brake Fluid 10-20
Battery 10-21
Electric Drive Unit Shift Lock Control Function Check 10-23
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 10-24

Headlamp Aiming
Headlamp Aiming 10-25

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 10-25
Halogen Bulbs 10-25
LED Lighting 10-25
Headlamps 10-25
Rear Fog Lamps 10-26
Reverse Lamps 10-27
Number Plate Lamp 10-27
Replacement Bulbs 10-28

Electrical System
High Voltage Devices and Wiring 10-28
Electrical System Overload 10-29
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-29
Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Right side) 10-33
Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Left side) 10-34
Rear Fuse Panel 10-36

Wheels and Tyres
Tyres 10-37
Tyre Pressure 10-38
Tyre Pressure Monitor System 10-40
Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation 10-41
Tyre Inspection 10-43
Tyre Rotation 10-43
When It Is Time for New Tyres 10-44
Buying New Tyres 10-45
Changing tyre and wheel size 10-46
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 10-46
Wheel Replacement 10-46
Tyre Chains 10-48
If a Tyre Goes Flat 10-48
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-50
Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-57

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 10-57

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 10-63

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 10-66
Interior Care 10-70
Floor Mats 10-73

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, may not be covered under the terms of the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

Accessories from your dealer are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. Your dealer can accessorise the vehicle using genuine accessories. When you go to your dealer and ask for accessories, you will know that Holden-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine accessories.

Lifting the Vehicle

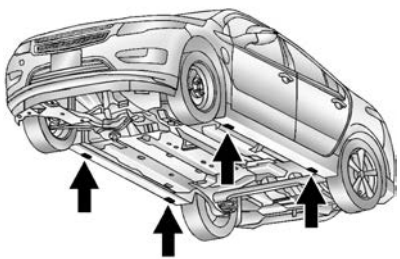
This vehicle can be lifted with a hoist or a service jack. Do not use any other type of jack to lift the vehicle.

Lifting the Vehicle with a Hoist

This vehicle can be lifted with a hoist at the four locations, as illustrated.

⚠ Caution

Lifting the vehicle improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.



The front lifting points can be accessed from either side of the vehicle, behind the front tyres.

The rear lifting points can be accessed from either side of the vehicle, in front of the rear tyres.

Lifting the Vehicle with a Service Jack

⚠ Warning

Lifting a vehicle can cause an injury. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over you or other people. You and they could be badly injured. Find a level place to lift your vehicle. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put the shift lever in P (Park).
3. Turn off the vehicle.

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, put blocks in front of and behind the wheels.

⚠ Danger

Getting under a vehicle when it is lifted on a jack is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Do not get under a vehicle supported by a jack. Do not place any portion of your body under a vehicle supported by a jack.

⚠ Warning

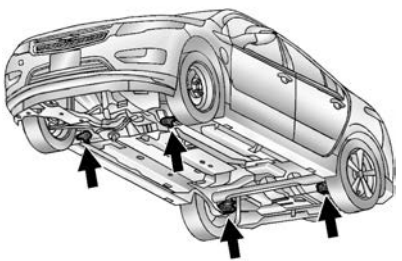
Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle or the vehicle may fall and cause injury to you or others.

When using a jack to lift the vehicle, follow the instructions that came with the jack and be sure to use the correct lifting points to avoid damaging the vehicle.

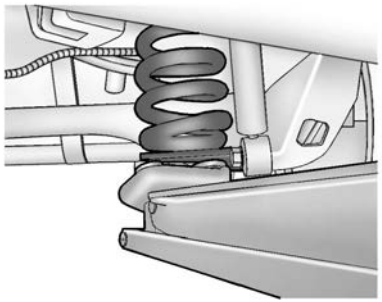
⚠ Caution

Lifting the vehicle improperly can cause damage and result in costly repairs not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. To lift the vehicle properly, use this procedure.

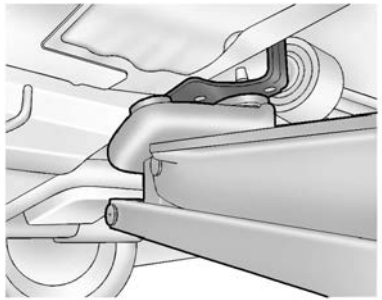
For additional information, see your dealer and the service manual.



There are four points where the vehicle can be lifted with a service jack.



When lifting the vehicle from the rear, place the service jack directly under the spring seat.



When lifting the vehicle from the front, place the service jack directly under the cradle mount. Ramps may be needed under the front tyres to provide the necessary clearance for certain service jacks in this location.

For more information, see *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 10-5*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ Danger

Never try to do your own service on high voltage battery components. You can be injured and the vehicle can be damaged if you try to do your own service work. Service and repair of these high voltage battery components should only be performed by a trained dealer technician with the proper knowledge and tools.

Exposure to high voltage can cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed.

⚠ Caution

Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps or dipsticks.

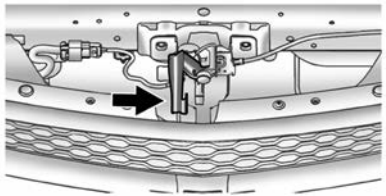
Bonnet

To open the bonnet:

1. Turn the vehicle off before opening the bonnet. If the vehicle is on, the engine will start when the bonnet is opened. See *Electric Mode on page 9-16* and *Extended Range Mode on page 9-17*.



2. Pull the release handle with this symbol. It is below the instrument panel outboard of the steering wheel.

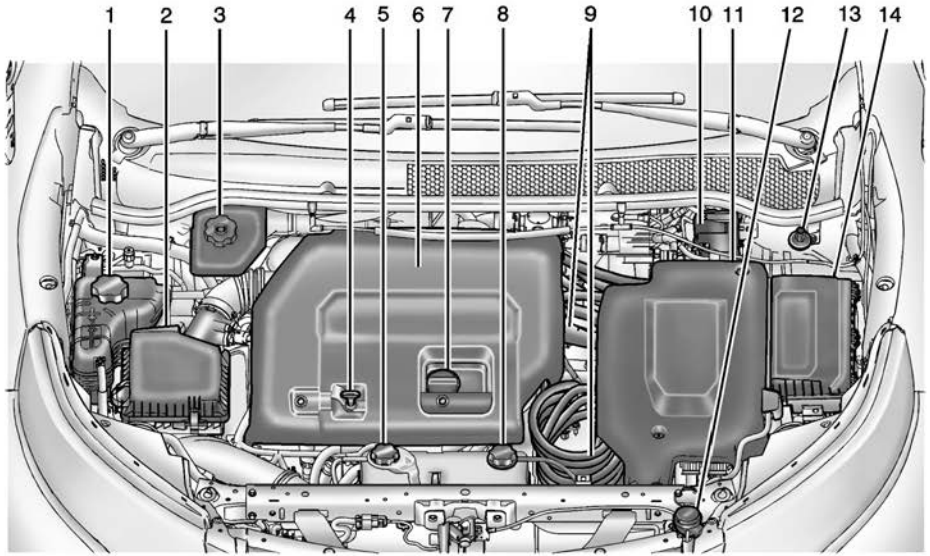


3. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the secondary release lever under the front centre of the bonnet. Push the secondary bonnet release lever to the right to disengage.
4. Lift the bonnet and release the bonnet prop rod from its retainer above the radiator support. Place the prop rod securely into the slotted retainer in the bonnet.

To close the bonnet:

1. Before closing the bonnet, check that all filler caps are properly installed. Then, lift the bonnet to relieve pressure on the bonnet prop.
2. Remove the bonnet prop from the slotted retainer in the bonnet and return it to its retainer above the radiator support. The prop rod must lock into place when returning it to the retainer to prevent bonnet damage.
3. Lower the bonnet 20 cm (8 in) above the vehicle and release it so it fully latches. Check to make sure the bonnet is firmly closed. Repeat the process if necessary.

Engine Compartment Overview



1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-15*.
2. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-12*.
3. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 10-19*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil on page 10-8*.
5. High Voltage Battery Coolant Reservoir and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (High Voltage Battery) on page 10-13* or *Cooling System (Power Electronics and Charger Modules) on page 10-14* or *Cooling System (Engine) on page 10-15*.
6. Engine Cover.
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil on page 10-8*.
8. Power Electronics Coolant Reservoir and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (High Voltage Battery) on page 10-13* or *Cooling System (Power Electronics and Charger Modules) on page 10-14* or *Cooling System (Engine) on page 10-15*.
9. High Voltage Cables (Orange Colour).
10. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 10-57*.
11. Power Electronics Module.
12. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Washer Fluid on page 10-18*.
13. Remote Negative (−) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 10-57*.
14. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-29*.

Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Always use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-11*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

Obtaining an accurate oil level reading is essential:

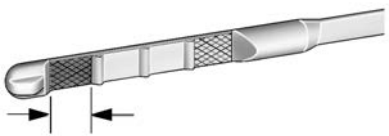
1. If the engine has been running recently, turn off the engine and allow several minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan. Checking the oil level too soon after engine shutoff will not provide an accurate oil level reading.

⚠ Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil



If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-3*.

⚠ Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

Specification

Use and ask for licensed engine oils with the dexos1® approved certification mark. Engine oils meeting the requirements for the vehicle should have the dexos1 approved certification mark. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos1 specification.



⚠ Caution

Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Check with your dealer or service provider on whether the oil is approved to the dexos1 specification.

Viscosity Grade

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −29°C (−20°F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, always select an oil of the correct specification. See “Specification” earlier in this section for more information.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the dexos specification and displaying the dexos certification mark are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags

containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the rubbish or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and kilometres driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km. It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to two years. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once every two years and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Use the SELECT knob to select OIL LIFE on the DIC menu.
2. Press SELECT to start the OIL LIFE reset procedure.
3. The DIC menu will display “Are you sure that you want to reset?” Use SELECT to choose YES to reset oil life or NO to exit and return to the previous menu.
4. If YES is selected, the DIC menu will display RESET OIL LIFE for a short time and then 100% OIL LIFE will be displayed when OIL LIFE is successfully reset.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

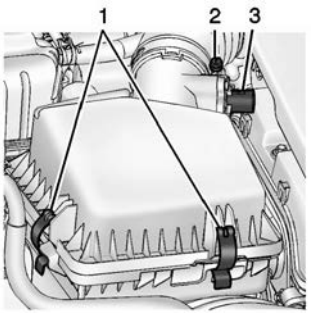
See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Filter

Inspect and replace the air cleaner/filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Filter

To inspect the air filter, remove it from the engine air cleaner/filter assembly and lightly shake to release loose dust and dirt. If the air filter remains covered with dirt, a new air filter is required.



1. Retaining Clips
2. Air Duct Clamp
3. Electrical Connector

To inspect or replace the air filter:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet on page 10-5*.
2. Locate the engine air cleaner/filter assembly on the driver side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7*.
3. Disconnect the air duct by loosening the air duct clamp (2).
4. Disconnect the electrical connector (3).
5. Lift the retaining clips (1) from the engine air cleaner/filter assembly.
6. Turn and tilt the air cleaner cover slightly upward and slide it out. Remove the air filter.

How to Reinstall the Engine Air Filter

1. Install the air filter into the engine air cleaner/filter assembly. The outer air filter seal must be fitted properly in the engine air cleaner/filter assembly.
2. Replace the air cleaner cover by lowering it to meet the bottom of the engine air cleaner/filter assembly. Place the retaining clips (1) on the engine air cleaner/filter assembly and secure. The rear tabs must be secured into the lower portion of the air cleaner.

3. Reconnect the air duct and tighten the air duct clamp (2).
4. Reconnect the electrical connector (3).

⚠ Warning

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burnt. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

⚠ Caution

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.

Cooling System (High Voltage Battery)

During vehicle operation and also during charging, the high voltage battery cells in the vehicle are kept within a normal operating temperature range. If the temperature rises above this temperature, the battery cooling system turns on the air conditioning compressor and cools the coolant until the correct temperature is reached. If the temperature falls below this temperature, a high voltage heater, located in the battery, heats the coolant until the correct temperature is reached.

What to Use

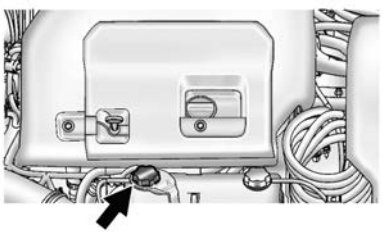
The high voltage battery coolant reservoir in the vehicle is filled with a 50/50 mixture of DEX-COOL™ engine coolant and deionised water. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added.

The coolant needs to be replaced at the appropriate interval. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

The high voltage battery coolant reservoir is located in the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7*.



Check to see if coolant is visible in the high voltage battery coolant reservoir. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is below the cold fill line, there could be a leak in the cooling system.

⚠ Caution

The high voltage battery coolant should only be serviced by a qualified technician. Contact a dealer if the level is low.

Cooling System (Power Electronics and Charger Modules)

The power electronics and charger modules are cooled using the same coolant loop.

The power electronics and charger modules in the vehicle are kept below a maximum temperature. If the temperature rises above this temperature, the electric cooling fans will turn on and cool the coolant until the correct temperature is reached.

What to Use

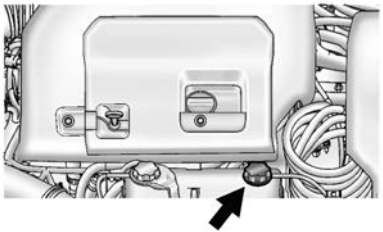
The power electronics and charger modules coolant reservoir in the vehicle is filled with a 50/50 mixture of DEX-COOL engine coolant and deionised water. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added.

The coolant needs to be replaced at the appropriate interval. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

The power electronics and charger modules coolant reservoir is located in the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7*.

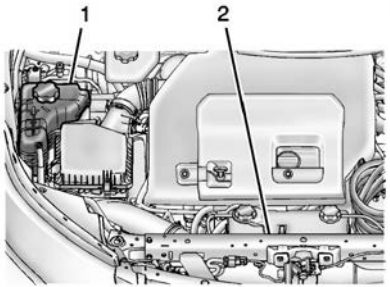


Check to see if coolant is visible in the power electronics and charger modules coolant reservoir. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is below the cold fill line, there could be a leak in the cooling system.

⚠ Caution

The power electronics and charger modules coolant should only be serviced by a qualified technician. Contact a dealer if the level is low.

Cooling System (Engine)



1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View)

⚠ Warning

The electric fans under the bonnet can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.

The coolant level should be up to the cold fill line. If it is not, there might be a leak at the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump, or somewhere else in the cooling system.

⚠ Warning

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burnt.

Do not run the vehicle if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burnt. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

If there seems to be no leak, with the engine on, check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, the fans should be running. If they are not, the vehicle needs service. Turn off the vehicle, and contact a dealer.

Engine Coolant

The engine cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL engine coolant. This coolant needs to be replaced at the appropriate interval. Refer to the Service/ Warranty Booklet.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-18*.

What to Use

⚠ Warning

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burnt. Use a 50/50 mixture of deionised water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of deionised water and DEX-COOL coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to −37°C (−34°F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminium parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

⚠ Caution

If improper coolant mixture, inhibitors or additives are used in the vehicle cooling system, the engine could overheat and be damaged. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack engine cooling parts. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Use only the proper mixture of engine coolant for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the rubbish, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorised service centre, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the cold fill mark, add a 50/50 mixture of deionised water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-18*.

The coolant reservoir is located in the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7*.

The coolant level should be at or above the cold fill line on the coolant surge tank. If it is not, there could be a leak in the cooling system.

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

⚠ Warning

You can be burnt if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

⚠ Caution

This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.

⚠ Warning

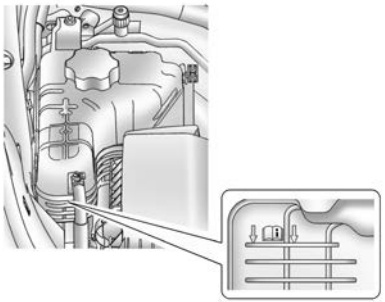
Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool.

If coolant is needed, add the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture at the coolant surge tank.



The coolant surge tank pressure cap can be removed when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

1. Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the cap and remove it.



3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture to the cold fill line.
4. Replace the pressure cap tightly.

⚠ Caution

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Ensure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an indicator to warn of engine overheating.

If the decision is made not to lift the bonnet when this warning appears, get service help right away.

If the decision is made to lift the bonnet, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, the fans should be running. If they are not, do not continue to run the vehicle and have the vehicle serviced.

⚠ Caution

Running the engine without coolant may cause damage or a fire. Vehicle damage may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Washer Fluid

What to Use

When adding windscreen washer fluid to the vehicle, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7* for reservoir location.

⚠ Caution

- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.
- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windscreen washer. It can damage the windscreen washer system and paint.

Brakes

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ Warning

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

⚠ Caution

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tyres are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-3*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

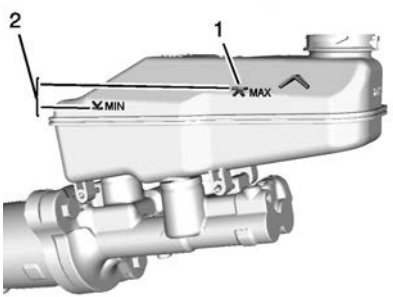
⚠ Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burnt, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-16*.

Checking Brake Fluid

Check brake fluid by looking at the brake fluid reservoir. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-7*.



With the vehicle not running for at least one minute, the maximum fluid level (1) is at the top of the reservoir body. With the vehicle running, the fluid level should be in the proper operating range (2) between the MIN and MAX marks. If it is not, have the brake hydraulic system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level, with the vehicle running, is in the proper operating range (2) between the MIN and MAX marks.

What to Add

Use only new DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ Warning

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

⚠ Caution

- Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.
- If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Battery

This vehicle has a high voltage battery and a standard 12-volt battery.

If the vehicle is in a crash, the sensing system may shut down the high voltage system. When this occurs, the high voltage battery is disconnected and the vehicle will not start. The SERVICE VEHICLE SOON message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will be displayed. Before the vehicle can be operated again, it must be serviced at your dealer.

⚠ Caution

Only a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools should inspect, test or replace the high voltage battery. See your dealer if the high voltage battery needs service.

The dealer has information on how to recycle the high voltage battery. There is also information available at http://www.recyclemybattery.com.

Keep the vehicle plugged in, even when fully charged, to keep the high voltage battery temperature ready for the next drive. This is important when outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold.

Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new 12-volt battery is needed. The vehicle has an Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) 12-volt battery. Installation of a standard 12-volt battery will result in reduced 12-volt battery life.

When using a 12-volt battery charger on the 12-volt AGM battery, some chargers have an AGM battery setting on the charger. If available, use the AGM setting on the charger, to limit charge voltage to 14.8 volts.

⚠ Warning

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ Warning

12-volt batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 10-57* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Up to four weeks

- Plug in the high voltage battery charge cord if temperatures will exceed 32°C (90°F) and keep the 12-volt battery cables connected.

Four weeks to 12 months

- Discharge the high voltage battery until two or three bars remain on the battery range indicator (Battery symbol) on the instrument cluster.
- Do not plug in the high voltage battery charge cord.
- Remove the black negative (−) cable from the 12-volt battery and attach a trickle charger to the battery terminals or keep the 12-volt battery cables connected and trickle charge from the under bonnet remote positive (+) and negative (−) terminals. See *Jump Starting on page 10-57* for the location of these terminals.

⚠ Caution

This vehicle has an Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) 12-volt battery. When using a 12-volt battery charger on the 12-volt battery, some chargers have an AGM setting on the charger.
If available, use the AGM setting on the charger. Follow the charger manufacturer's instructions.

Reconnecting the 12-Volt Black Negative Cable

With the 12-volt black negative (−) cable disconnected, the hatch cannot be opened by pressing the hatch release button. If the hatch is closed and latched, reopen it:

1. Use the door key to open the driver door.
2. Manually unlock and open one of the rear doors.
3. Lower one of the rear seatbacks.
4. Pull the load floor cover forward to access and reconnect the 12-volt battery black negative (−) cable.
5. After the cable has been connected, open the hatch and then tighten the cable.

After the battery cable is reconnected, it is possible that the vehicle may not operate in Electric Mode. If this happens, the high voltage battery may need to be charged.

Electric Drive Unit Shift Lock Control Function Check

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-25*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the vehicle off and the brake not applied, press and hold the POWER ⏻ button for more than five seconds to place the vehicle in Service Only Mode. See *Power Button on page 9-11*. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the electric parking brake.

- To check the electric parking brake's holding ability: With the propulsion system active and the electric drive unit in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the electric parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the propulsion system active, shift to P (Park). Then release the electric parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 10-28*.

For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurised gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

LED Lighting

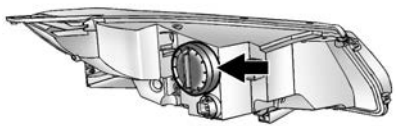
This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

Headlamps

Passenger Side Headlamps

To replace the high/low-beam headlamp:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet on page 10-5*.



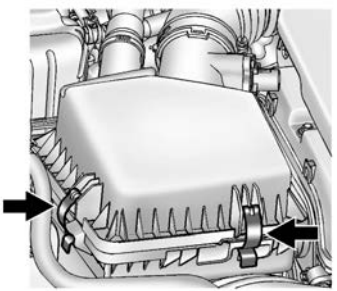
2. Remove the cover from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
3. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the wiring harness connector.
5. Connect the new bulb to the wiring harness connector.

6. Install the bulb socket in the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.
7. Install the cover in the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.

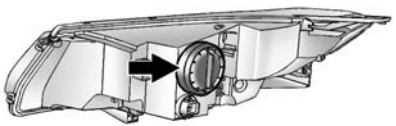
Driver Side Headlamps

To replace the high/low-beam headlamp:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet on page 10-5*.

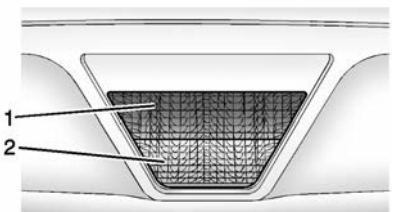


2. Remove the air cleaner cover.
3. Remove the air cleaner assembly by pulling up to release the rear two retention posts from the securing grommets. Then pull it forward to remove the remaining retention post from the securing grommet.



4. Remove the cover from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
5. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
6. Disconnect the bulb from the wiring harness connector.
7. Connect the new bulb to the wiring harness connector.
8. Install the bulb socket in the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.
9. Install the cover on the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.
10. Install the air cleaner assembly by lowering the three retention posts into the grommets.
11. Install the engine air cleaner/ filter assembly cover.

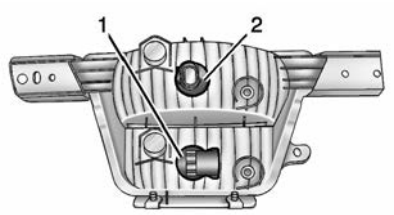
Rear Fog Lamps



Reverse/Rear Fog Lamp Assembly - Outside View

1. Rear Fog Lamp

2. Reverse Lamp



Reverse/Rear Fog Lamp Assembly - Back Side View

1. Remove the three inboard screws from the aero panel located under the rear fascia.
2. Push up on the aero panel to locate the rear fog lamp bulb socket (2).
3. Turn the bulb socket (2) anticlockwise to remove it from the bulb assembly.
4. Pull the bulb from the bulb socket.
5. Push a new bulb straight into the bulb socket.
6. Reinstall the bulb socket by lining up the tabs and turn it clockwise to lock it into place.
7. Replace the three inboard screws into the aero panel.

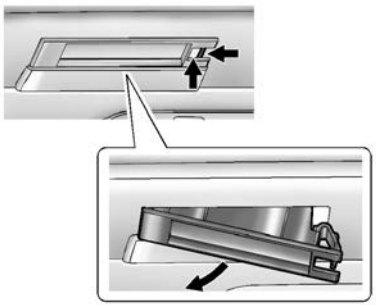
Reverse Lamps

To replace a bulb:

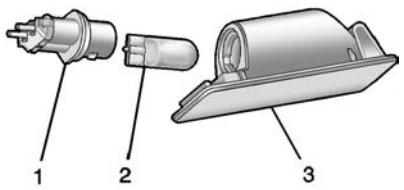
1. Remove the three inboard screws from the aero panel located under the rear fascia.
2. Push up on the aero panel to locate the reverse lamp bulb socket (1).
3. Turn the bulb socket (1) anticlockwise to remove it from the bulb assembly.
4. Pull the bulb from the bulb socket.
5. Push a new bulb straight into the bulb socket.
6. Reinstall the bulb socket by lining up the tabs and turn it clockwise to lock it into place.
7. Replace the three inboard screws into the aero panel.

Number Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:



1. Press the spring clip on the right end of the lamp assembly to the left to unlock the lamp assembly.
2. Pull down on the lamp assembly to remove it from the fascia.



3. Turn the bulb socket (1) anticlockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).
4. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket (1).
5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket (1) and turn the bulb socket (1) clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly (3).
6. Reinstall the lamp assembly (3) into the fascia by inserting the left side first.
7. Push the spring clip side into place.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Reverse lamp	W16W
High/Low-Beam Headlamps	HIR2 (9012)
Number Plate Lamps	W5W
Rear Fog Lamp	W16W

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

Electrical System

High Voltage Devices and Wiring

⚠ Danger

Exposure to high voltage can cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training.

High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect the following in the vehicle:

- Headlamp Wiring
- Windscreen Wiper Motor
- Power Windows and other Power Accessories

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that does not currently need to be used and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

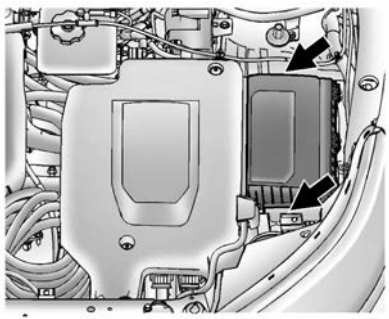
Windscreen Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windscreen wipers will stop until the motor cools and the wiper control is turned off. After removal of the blockage, the wiper motor will restart when the control is moved to the desired operating position.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice, may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windscreen before using the windscreen wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

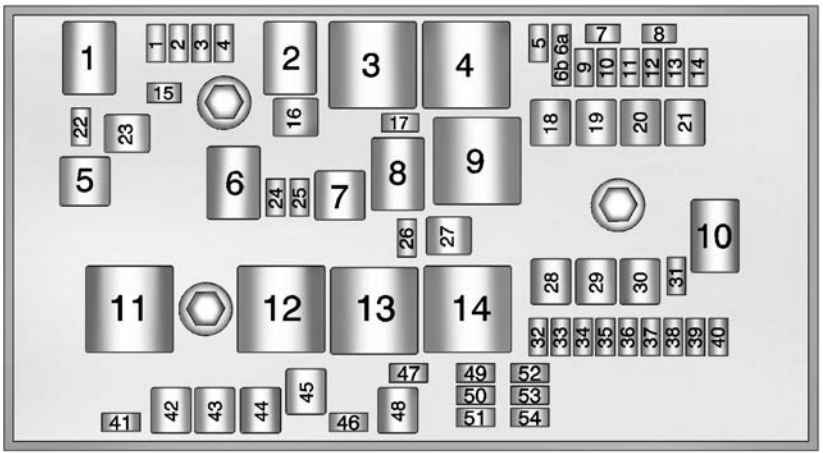
Engine Compartment Fuse Block



To open the fuse block cover, press the clips at the front and back and rotate the cover up to the side.

⚠ Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



Engine Compartment Fuse Block

A fuse puller is in the engine compartment fuse block.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Mini Fuses	Usage
1	Engine Control Module – Switched Power
2	Emissions
3	Not Used

Mini Fuses	Usage
4	Ignition Coils/ Injectors
5	CLM
6a	Empty
6b	Rear Demister
7	Empty
8	Empty
9	Heated Mirrors
10	Air Conditioning Control Module
11	Traction Power Inverter Module – Battery
12	Not Used
13	Cabin Heater Pump and Valve
14	PWR SNDR

Mini Fuses	Usage
15	Traction Power Inverter Module and Transmission Control Module – Battery
17	Engine Control Module – Battery
22	Left High -Beam Headlamp
24	Empty
25	Empty
26	Theft deterrent Horn
31	Not Used
32	Run/Crank – Sensing Diagnostic Module (SDM), Instrument Cluster, Passenger Airbag Display, Automatic Dimming Inside Rear view Mirror (If Equipped)

Mini Fuses	Usage
33	Run/Crank for Vehicle Integration Control Module
34	Vehicle Integration Control Module – Battery
35	Not Used
36	Power Electronics Coolant Pump
37	Cabin Heater Control Module
38	Rechargeable Energy Storage System (High Voltage Battery) Coolant Pump
39	Rechargeable Energy Storage System (High Voltage Battery) Control Module
40	Front Windscreen Washer

Mini Fuses	Usage
41	Right High-Beam Headlamp
46	Empty
47	Empty
49	Empty
50	Run/Crank – Rear Vision Camera, Accessory Power Module
51	Run/Crank for ABS/ Rechargeable Energy Storage System (High Voltage Battery)
52	Engine Control Module/ Transmission Control Module – Run/Crank
53	Traction Power Inverter Module – Run/Crank

Mini Fuses	Usage
54	Run/Crank – Fuel System Control Module, Air Conditioning Control Module, On Board Charger

J-Case Fuses	Usage
16	AIR Solenoid (PZEV Only)
18	Empty
19	Power Window – Front
20	Empty
21	Antilock Brake System Electronic Control Unit
23	Charge Port Door
27	AIR Pump (PZEV Only)
28	Empty
29	Empty

J-Case Fuses	Usage
30	Antilock Brake System Motor
42	Cooling Fan – Right
43	Front Wipers
44	Charger
45	Empty
48	Cooling Fan – Left

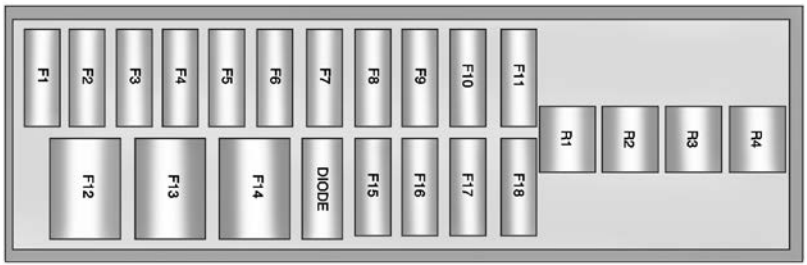
Mini Relays	Usage
3	Powertrain
4	Rear Demist
7	Empty
9	AIR Pump (PZEV Only)
11	Empty
12	Empty
13	Empty
14	Run/Crank

Micro Relays	Usage
1	Empty
2	AIR Solenoid (PZEV Only)
6	Empty
8	Empty
10	Empty

Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Right side)

The left instrument panel fuse block is on the left side end of the instrument panel. To access the fuses, open the fuse panel door by pulling out.

To reinstall the door, insert the bottom tab first, then push the door back into its original location.



Instrument Panel Fuse Block

A fuse puller is located in the engine compartment fuse block.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
F1	SWC BKLT
F2	RHD CLM
F3	RHD Cluster
F4	RT Headlamp
F5	BCM EXT Lights

Fuses	Usage
F6	Empty
F7	Interior Lamps
F8	Turn Signal/Locks
F9	Locks
F10	DLCRT
F11	UGDO, Theft Sensor, LDW
F12	Empty
F13	Empty

Fuses	Usage
F14	Empty
F15	Empty
F16	Empty
F17	Empty
F18	Empty

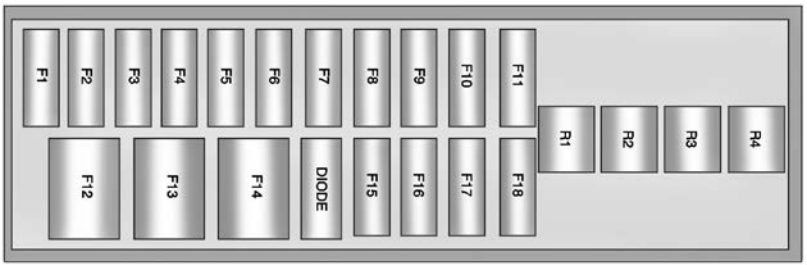
Relays	Usage
R1	Empty
R2	Empty
R3	Empty
R4	RHD DBOLT

Diodes	Usage
DIODE	Empty

Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Left side)

The right instrument panel fuse block is on the right side end of the instrument panel. To access the fuses, open the fuse panel door by pulling out.

To reinstall the door, insert the bottom tab first, then push the door back into its original location.



Instrument Panel Fuse Block

A fuse puller is located in the engine compartment fuse block.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
F1	LTR
F2	Radio
F3	Empty
F4	Display
F5	HVAC
F6	Airbag
F7	DLC LT
F8	Empty
F9	GSM
F10	BCM/EXT Lights
F11	LT Headlamp
F12	Blower
F13	Empty
F14	Empty
F15	APO
F16	Empty
F17	Empty
F18	Empty

Relays	Usage
R1	RAP Relay
R2	Empty
R3	Empty
R4	RHD Child Lockout

Diodes	Usage
DIODE	Empty

Rear Fuse Panel

The rear fuse panel is on the left side of the rear compartment behind a removable cover. Open the latch to remove the cover and access the fuse block.



A fuse puller is in the engine compartment fuse block.

The vehicle may not have all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
F1	Empty
F2	Fuel System Control Module
F3	Passive Start/ Passive Entry Module
F4	Heated Seats (If Equipped)
F5	Driver Door Switches (Outside Rear View Mirror/ Refuel Request/ Driver Window Switch)
F6	Fuel (Diurnal Valve and Evap. Leak Check Module)
F7	Accessory Power Module Cooling Fan

Fuses	Usage
F8	Amplifier
F9	Empty
F10	Regulated Voltage Control/Ultrasonic Front and Rear Parking Assist
F11	Horn
F12	Rear Power Windows
F13	Electric Parking Brake
F14	Rear Demist (Upper Grid)
F15	Empty
F16	Hatch Release
F17	Empty
F18	Empty

Relays	Usage
R1	Rear Demist (Upper Grid)
R2	Hatch Release
R3	Empty
R4	Empty
R5	Empty
R6	Empty
R7/R8	Horn

Diodes	Usage
DIODE	Empty

Wheels and Tyres

Tyres

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tyres made by a leading tyre manufacturer. See the Service/Warranty Booklet for information regarding the tyre warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tyre manufacturer.

⚠ Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tyres are dangerous.
- Overloading the tyres can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

serious crash. See “Vehicle Weight” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-3*.

- Underinflated tyres pose the same danger as overloaded tyres. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tyres frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold.
- Overinflated tyres are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact— such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tyres at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tyres can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.

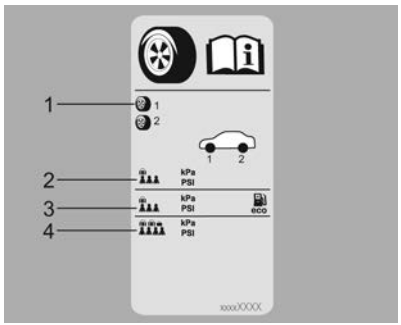
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Replace any tyres that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tyres can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorised tyre service centre should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tyres.
- Do not spin the tyres in excess of 56 km/h on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tyres to explode.

Tyre Pressure

Tyre placard



The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard in the passenger's door opening (B pillar).

The front tyre pressures are shown in the left column and the rear tyre pressures are shown in the right column.

The placard may display the tyre sizes and pressures as described below:

(1) Tyre size, minimum load rating, minimum speed rating

(2) Tyre pressure at normal load

(3) Tyre pressure for fuel economy driving at normal load

(4) Tyre pressure at maximum load

Tyres need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

⚠ Caution

Neither tyre underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tyres or tyres that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tyre overloading and overheating which could lead to a blowout.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Overinflated tyres, or tyres that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.
- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

The tyre placard on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tyres and the correct cold tyre inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

When to Check

Check the tyres once a month or more.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check the tyre pressure. Proper tyre inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tyre. Check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km.

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get the pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre placard, no further adjustment is necessary.

If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure in high, press on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve to release air. Re-check the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge.

Return the valve caps on the valve stems to keep out dirt and moisture and prevent leaks.

Tyre Pressure Monitor System

⚠ Caution

Modifications made to the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorised service facility may void authorisation to use the system.

The Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tyre pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tyres and transmit tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tyre should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the tyre placard. If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the tyre placard, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated.

This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-41* for additional information.

Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation

The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tyre pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tyre and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tyres and transmit the tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tyre pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tyre pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the tyre placard. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tyre displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The low tyre pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each drive cycle until the tyres are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tyre pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-37*.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The tyre placard shows the size of the original equipment tyres and the correct inflation pressure for the tyres when they are cold. For an example of the tyre placard and its location, see *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tyre pressure condition but it does not replace normal tyre maintenance. See *Tyre Inspection on page 10-43*, *Tyre Rotation on page 10-43*, and *Tyres on page 10-37*.

⚠ Caution

Tyre sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tyre sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tyre sealant could affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Always use only the GM-approved tyre sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

Factory-installed Tyre Inflator Kits use a GM-approved liquid tyre sealant. Using non-approved tyre sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-50* for information regarding the inflator kit materials and instructions.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tyre pressure warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the vehicle on/off cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each vehicle on/off cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- The TPMS sensor matching process was started but not completed or not completed successfully after rotating the tyres. The DIC message and malfunction light should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tyres or wheels do not match the original equipment tyres or wheels. Tyres and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tyres on page 10-45*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly , it cannot detect or signal a low tyre condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tyre/wheel position after rotating the vehicle's tyres or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next drive cycle. See your dealer for assistance.

Tyre Inspection

We recommend that the tyres be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tyre if:

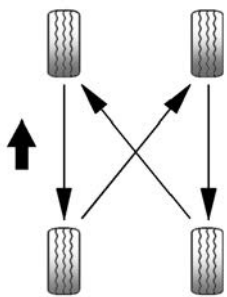
- The indicators at three or more places around the tyre can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Tyre Rotation

Tyres should be rotated at the intervals specified in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Tyres are rotated to achieve a more uniform wear for all tyres.

Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tyres as soon as possible, check for proper tyre inflation pressure, and check for damaged tyres or wheels. If the unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment. See *When It Is Time for New Tyres on page 10-44* and *Wheel Replacement on page 10-46*.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating the tyres.

Adjust the front and rear tyres to the recommended inflation pressure on the tyre placard after the tyres have been rotated. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor System. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-41*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-3*.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause a crash. When

(Continued)

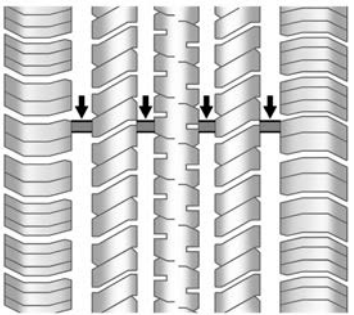
Warning (Continued)

changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used, however, use a scraper or wire brush to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the centre of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tyre rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

When It Is Time for New Tyres

Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tyres.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tyres. Treadwear indicators appear when the tyres have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See *Tyre Inspection on page 10-43* and *Tyre Rotation on page 10-43*.

The rubber in tyres ages over time. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. GM recommends that tyres be replaced no later than every 6 years, or more often as required.

Vehicle Storage

Tyres age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow aging. This area should be free of grease, petrol, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tyres that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tyres or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tyres.

Buying New Tyres

GM has developed and matched specific tyres for the vehicle.

GM recommends replacing worn tyres in complete sets of four. Uniform tread depth on all tyres will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tyres are not replaced at the same time. If proper rotation and maintenance have been done, all four tyres should wear out at about the same time. See *Tyre Rotation on page 10-43* for information on proper tyre rotation. However, if it is necessary to replace only one axle set of worn tyres, place the new tyres on the rear axle.

⚠ Danger

Tyres could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tyre could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorised tyre service centre should mount or dismount the tyres.

⚠ Warning

Mixing tyres of different sizes, brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tyre on all wheels.

⚠ Danger

Using bias-ply tyres on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many kilometres of driving. A tyre and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tyres with the wheels on the vehicle.

Vehicles that have a tyre pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tyres are installed. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-40*.

Changing tyre and wheel size

If wheels or tyres are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tyres, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ Warning

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tyres not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tyre systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a Holden Dealer.

See *Buying New Tyres on page 10-45* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

The tyres and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tyre life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tyre balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tyre wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tyres and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced.

If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminium wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width and offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

⚠ Warning

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tyres can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

⚠ Caution

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tyre clearance to the body and chassis.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause a crash. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used, however, use a scraper or wire brush to remove all rust or dirt.

⚠ Warning

Never use oil or grease on studs or the threads of the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts might come loose and the wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to a crash. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts.

⚠ Caution

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ Warning

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tyre Chains

⚠ Warning

Do not use tyre chains. There is not enough clearance. Tyre chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

parts. The area damaged by the tyre chains could cause loss of control and a crash.

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for the vehicle's tyre size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To avoid vehicle damage, drive slowly and readjust or remove the traction device if it contacts the vehicle. Do not spin the wheels. If traction devices are used, install them on the front tyres.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

This vehicle has a tyre sealant and compressor kit. See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-50*. There is no spare tyre, no tyre changing equipment, and no place to store a tyre.

To properly lift this vehicle, see *Lifting the Vehicle on page 10-2*.

It is unusual for a tyre to blowout while driving, especially if the tyres are maintained properly. See *Tyres on page 10-37*. If air goes out of a tyre, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there ever is a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tyre fails, the flat tyre will create a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tyre will cause permanent damage to the tyre. Re-inflating a tyre after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tyre that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorised tyre service centre repair or replace the flat tyre as soon as possible.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place and stopping, well off the road, if possible.

1. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.
2. Set the parking brake firmly.
3. Put the shift lever in P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-14*.
4. Turn off the engine.
5. Inspect the flat tyre.

If the tyre has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a puncture larger than 6 mm (0.25 in), the tyre is too severely damaged for the tyre sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

If the tyre has a puncture less than 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tyre, see *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-50*.

Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

⚠ Danger

Running the engine in Extended Range Mode in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in Extended Range Mode in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-21*.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tyre could cause the tyre to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tyre to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ Warning

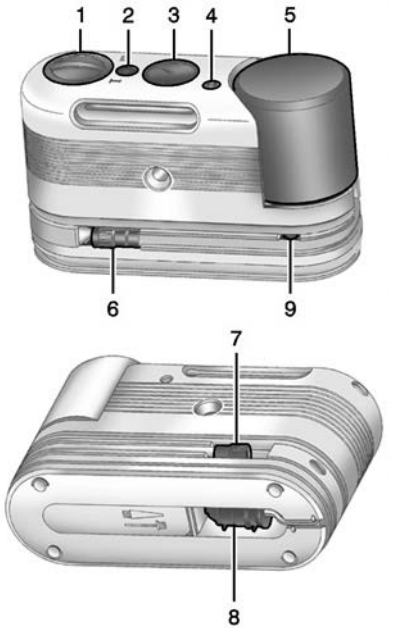
Storing the tyre sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tyre sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

The tyre sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tyre.

If the tyre has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tyre is too severely damaged for the tyre sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

Read and follow all of the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)
2. On/Off Button
3. Pressure Gauge
4. Pressure Deflation Button (If equipped)
5. Tyre Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant Air Hose)

Tyre Sealant

Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

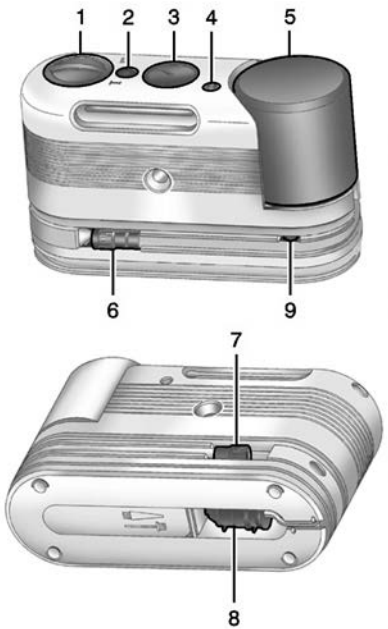
Check the tyre sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date.

Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tyre

Follow the directions closely for correct sealant usage.



When using the tyre sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tyre faster.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

See *If a Tyre Goes Flat on page 10-48* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.

1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-57*.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (6) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose (6) onto the tyre valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-4*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) anticlockwise to the Sealant + Air position.

9. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tyre.

   The pressure gauge (3) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tyre, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air only.

10. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the tyre placard. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*.

    The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

⚠ Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven further. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

11. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tyre; therefore, Steps 12–18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

    Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.

13. Turn the sealant/air hose (6) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.

14. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.

15. Replace the sealant/air hose (6), and the power plug (8) back in their original location.



16. If the flat tyre was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister (5) and place it in a highly visible location.

    Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tyre is repaired or replaced.

17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.

18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km to distribute the sealant in the tyre.

19. Stop at a safe location and check the tyre pressure. Refer to Steps 1–11 under “Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured).”

    If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant cannot seal the tyre.

    If the tyre pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure.

20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre, and vehicle.

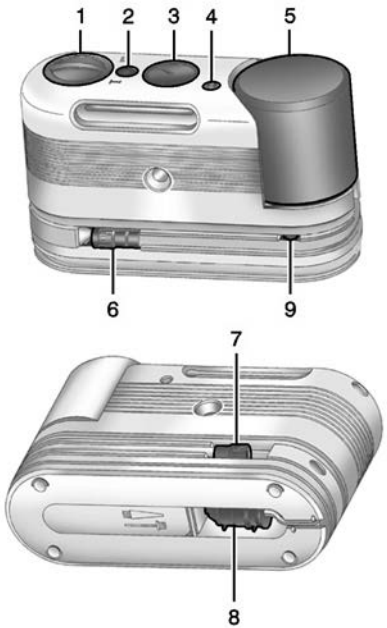
21. Dispose of the used sealant canister (5) and sealant/air hose (6) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local regulations and practices.

22. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.

23. After temporarily sealing a tyre using the tyre sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorised dealer within 160 km of driving to have the tyre repaired or replaced.

Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured)

To use the air compressor to inflate a tyre with air only and not sealant:



If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-3*.

See *If a Tyre Goes Flat on page 10-48* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-57*.
2. Unwrap the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tyre valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (7) onto the tyre valve stem by turning it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-4*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) clockwise to the Air Only position.
9. Press the on/off (2) button to turn the compressor on.

   The compressor will inflate the tyre with air only.

10. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the tyre placard. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-38*.

    The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

    If you inflate the tyre higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (4), if equipped, until the proper pressure reading is reached. This option is only functional when using the air only hose (7).

11. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

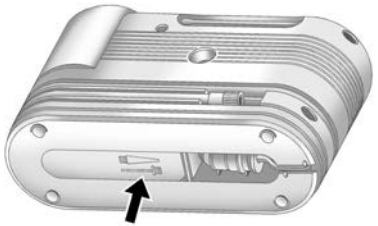
    Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.

13. Disconnect the air only hose (7) from the tyre valve stem by turning it anticlockwise, and replace the tyre valve stem cap.

14. Replace the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8) and cord back in their original locations.

15. Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.



The tyre sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister

To remove the sealant canister:

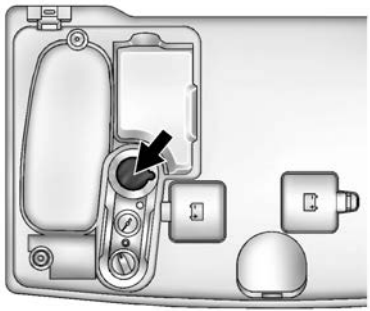
1. Unwrap the sealant hose.
2. Press the canister release button (9).
3. Pull up and remove the canister.

4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
5. Push the new canister into place.

Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

To access the tyre sealant and compressor kit:

1. Open the hatch. See *Hatch on page 2-11*.
2. Lift the cover.



3. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit.

To store the tyre sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Jump Starting

Jump starting is connecting jumper cables between the two vehicles to enable vehicle starting. If the Volt or another vehicle has a run-down 12-volt battery, the vehicle with the 12-volt run-down battery can be jump started using good condition jumper cables. There are different procedures depending on if the Volt has a run-down battery or another vehicle has a run-down battery. Read the appropriate procedures that follow.

⚠ Danger

The high voltage battery cannot be jump started either with another vehicle or battery charger. Personal injury, death, or damage to the vehicle could result.

⚠ Warning

Batteries are dangerous and can cause injury. Batteries contain acid and can explode or ignite. They contain electricity that can burn. Follow the exact steps provided or injuries could occur.

Using an open flame near a battery can cause battery gas to explode; you or others could be hurt. Battery acid can cause blindness.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn. If battery fluid gets in eyes or on skin; flush with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Electric fans can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fans.

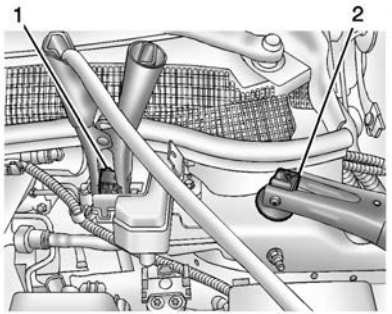
⚠ Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work and it could damage the vehicle.

Jump Starting the 12-Volt Battery

If the Volt won't start, the 12-volt battery may be run down. To jump start the Volt use the under bonnet remote positive (+) and negative (−) terminals.



1. Remote Positive (+) Terminal
2. Remote Negative (−) Terminal

1. The other vehicle used to jump start the Volt must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

⚠ Caution

Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting. If the other vehicle does not have a

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged.

2. Park both vehicles close enough so that the jumper cables can reach both vehicles' positive (+) and negative (−) terminals. The vehicles must not touch each other. It could cause an unwanted ground connection that could damage both vehicles' electrical systems.

   Put both vehicles in P (Park) for an automatic transmission or electric drive unit. For a manual transmission, place the vehicle in N (Neutral) and set the parking brake.

⚠ Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting the vehicle.

3. Turn off the ignition on the other vehicle. Turn off the radio, all lamps, and accessories that are not needed in both vehicles. Unplug accessories from the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. This avoids sparks and helps save both batteries and accessories.
4. Locate the positive (+) and negative (−) terminals on the other vehicle.
5. Open the bonnet to locate the positive (+) and negative (−) terminals on your Volt. Open the access cover for the remote positive (+) terminal (1). The remote negative terminal (2) for the Volt is a stud marked GND (−) on the driver side of the engine compartment.
6. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation or a shock could result and the vehicles could be damaged.

   Before connecting the jumper cables, here are some basic things to know. Positive (+) jumper cable goes to positive (+) battery terminal or a remote positive (+) terminal if available. Negative (−) jumper cable goes to negative (−) battery terminal or a remote negative (−) terminal if available. Do not connect positive (+) to negative (−) or there will be a short that may damage the battery and other parts of the vehicle.

⚠ Caution

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

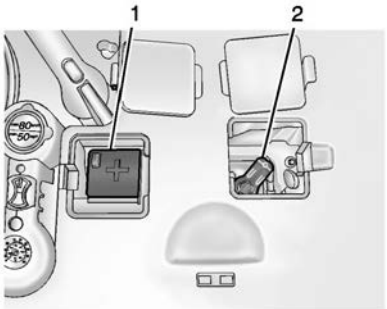
1. Connect the red positive (+) jumper cable to the remote positive (+) terminal (1) of your Volt. Do not let the other end of the cable touch metal.
2. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the other vehicle.
3. Connect the black negative (−) jumper cable to the negative (−) battery terminal of the other vehicle battery. Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step.
4. Connect the other end of the black negative (−) jumper cable to the remote negative (−) terminal (2) of your Volt.
5. Push the POWER ⏻ button to start. This will wake up the electronics on the Volt. After the instrument cluster initialises, the Volt will use power from the high voltage battery to charge the 12-volt battery. The jumper cables can then be disconnected. If the Volt does not start, contact your dealer.

Disconnecting the Jumper Cables

1. Disconnect the black negative (−) jumper cable from the Volt. Do not let the other end of the cable touch anything until after the next step.
2. Disconnect the black negative (−) jumper cable from the other vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) jumper cable from the other vehicle. Do not let the other end of the cable touch anything until after the next step.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) jumper cable from the Volt.
5. Return the positive (+) and negative (−) terminal covers to their original positions.

Jump Starting Another Vehicle

When using the Volt to jump start another vehicle with a run-down battery, jumper cables are connected directly to the positive (+) and negative (−) terminals on the 12-volt battery in the rear cargo area. Do not use the remote terminals under the bonnet. This could cause a fuse to overload in the Volt.



1. Positive (+) Terminal
2. Negative (−) Terminal

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

⚠ Caution

Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting. If the other vehicle does not have a

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged.

2. Park both vehicles close enough so that the jumper cables can reach both vehicles' positive (+) and negative (−) terminals. The vehicles must not touch each other. It could cause an unwanted ground connection that could damage both vehicles' electrical systems.

   Put both vehicles in P (Park) for an automatic transmission or electric drive unit. For a manual transmission, place the vehicle in N (Neutral) and set the parking brake.

⚠ Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting the vehicle.

3. Turn off both vehicles. Turn off the radio, all lamps, and accessories that are not needed in both vehicles. Unplug accessories from the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. This avoids sparks and helps save both batteries and accessories.
4. Locate the positive (+) and negative (−) terminals on the vehicle with the run-down battery.

5. Locate the positive (+) and negative (−) battery terminals on the Volt. The access cover is under the load floor access cover in the rear cargo area. Open the access covers for the positive (+) terminal (1) and the negative (−) terminal (2).
6. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation or a shock could result and the vehicles could be damaged.

   Before connecting the jumper cables, here are some basic things to know. Positive (+) jumper cable goes to positive (+) battery terminal or a remote positive (+) terminal if available. Negative (−) jumper cable goes to remote negative (−) terminal if available, or a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or a solid engine ground on the vehicle with the run-down battery.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (−) or there will be a short that may damage the battery or other parts of the vehicle. Do not connect the negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal on the run-down battery because this can cause sparks.

⚠ Caution

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

1. Connect the red positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the other vehicle with the run-down battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if available. Do not let the other end touch metal.
2. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) battery terminal of the Volt.
3. Connect the black negative (−) jumper cable to the negative (−) battery terminal of the Volt. Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step.
4. Make the final connection to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to the remote negative (−) terminal on the other vehicle with the run-down battery.

5. Press the POWER ⏻ button to start the Volt. This will wake up the electronics on the Volt. The engine will only start if it is needed.
6. Try to start the other vehicle that had the run-down battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Disconnecting the Jumper Cables

1. Disconnect the black negative (−) jumper cable from the other vehicle that had the run-down battery. Do not let the other end of the cable touch anything until after the next step.
2. Disconnect the black negative (−) jumper cable from the Volt.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) jumper cable from the Volt. Do not let the other end of the cable touch anything until after the next step.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) jumper cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the positive (+) and negative (−) terminal covers to their original positions.

Towing the Vehicle

⚠ Caution

Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage to the vehicle. The disabled vehicle should be towed on a flatbed car carrier. Use care when there is low ground clearance and/or special equipment.

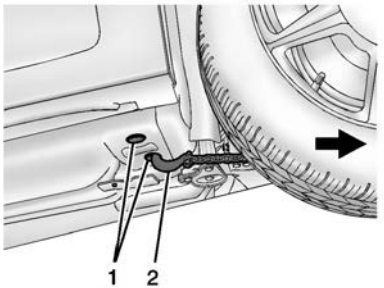
Attempting to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed without following the proper steps could damage the vehicle.

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

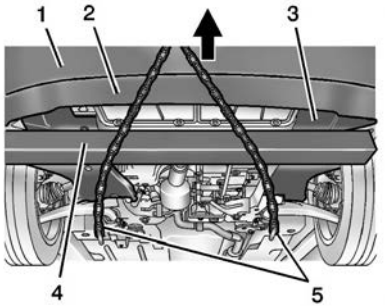
To load a vehicle onto a flatbed carrier:

1. The vehicle must be on a flat surface.

2. The front tyres must be properly inflated. If necessary, move a rear tyre to the front to replace a flat or damaged tyre.

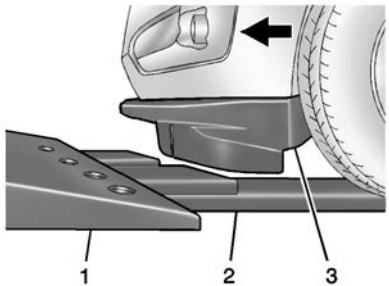


3. Place the tow chain hooks (2) into one of the torque box openings (1) behind the front wheels.



4. Place a 1.2 m (4 ft) X 102 mm (4 in) X 102 mm (4 in) wood beam (4) under the front cradle crossmember (3), and on top of both tow chains (5) to ensure the tow chains do not come into contact with the front fascia (1).

   Try to minimise the contact of the chains with the flexible air dam (2).

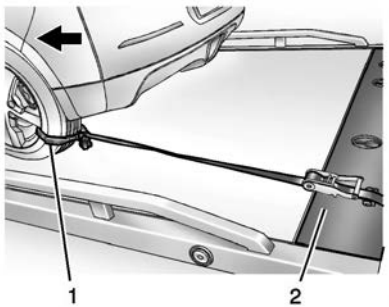


5. Ramps (2) are required for the front fascia (3) to clear the flatbed (1). The ramp height should be approximately 102 mm (4 in). Lower the flatbed onto the set of ramps.

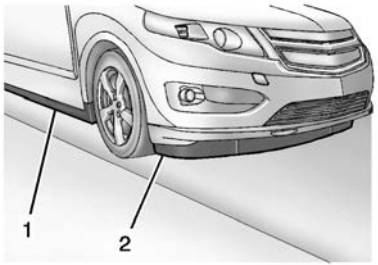
⚠ Caution

If ramps are not used, the front fascia will come into contact with the flatbed and may cause damage. Always use ramps.

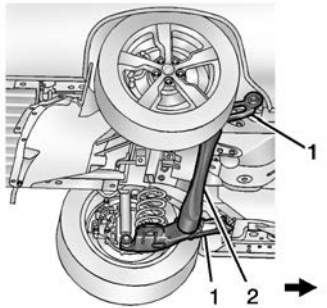
6. After the front tyres are on the flatbed adjust the flatbed upward to provide additional clearance between the air dam, fascia, and flatbed.
7. When the fascia has enough clearance to clear the flatbed, lower the flatbed, and finish pulling the vehicle onto the flatbed.



8. Secure the vehicle to the flatbed (2) using nonabrasive straps (1) through all four wheel openings and secure the straps to the flatbed (2).



If the vehicle is parked off the shoulder of the road, at an angle that it cannot be pulled onto a flatbed, a hook/chain can be placed into either of the front torque box openings to pull the vehicle onto a flat surface. Make sure that the chains do not come in contact with the rocker panel (1) or the front fascia (2).



⚠ Caution

When using tow straps to move the vehicle, damage may occur if the tow straps contact the rear fascia. Do not let the tow straps contact the rear fascia.

If you cannot access the front torque box openings, wrap a tow strap through one, or both of the rear trailing arms (1) between the bushing and torque tube, and pull the vehicle onto a flat surface. Do not wrap the tow strap around the rear torque tube (2).

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

⚠ Caution

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

⚠ Caution

Avoid using high-pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as

calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

⚠ Caution

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

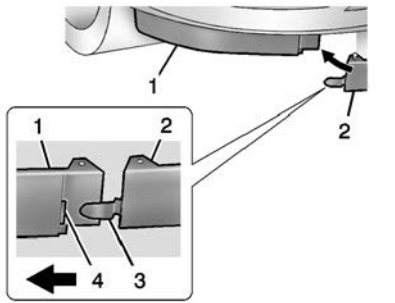
To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Regularly clean bright metal parts with water or chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

For aluminium, never use auto or chrome polish, steam, or caustic soap to clean. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Front Air Deflector



1. Outer Air Deflector
2. Inner Air Deflector
3. Tab
4. Slot

The front air deflector directs the air flow under the vehicle.

If it becomes detached, insert the Tab into the Slot. Repeat for the other side.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses and Emblems

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" earlier in this section.

Windscreen and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windscreen with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windscreen washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windscreen thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips once a year. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2*.

Tyres

Use a stiff brush with tyre cleaner to clean the tyres.

⚠ Caution

Using petroleum-based tyre dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/ or tyres. When applying a tyre dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

Wheels and Trim — Aluminium or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

⚠ Caution

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

⚠ Caution

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes or cleaners that contain acid on aluminium or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminium or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tyre cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect the power steering for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, bonnet hinges, liftgate hinges, and the steel fuel door hinge unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Underbody Maintenance

Use plain water to flush dirt and debris from the vehicle's underbody. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this. If not removed, rust and corrosion can develop.

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Note that newspapers or dark garments that can transfer colour to home furnishings can also permanently transfer colour to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Your dealer may have products for cleaning the interior. Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners directly on any switches or controls. Cleaners should be removed quickly. Never allow cleaners to remain on the surface being cleaned for extended periods of time.

Cleaners may contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with excessive pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per 3.78 L of water. A concentrated soap solution will leave a residue that creates streaks and attracts dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. Commercial glass cleaners may be used, if necessary, after cleaning the interior glass with plain water.

⚠ Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window demister.

Cleaning the windscreen with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

Coated Mouldings

Coated mouldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating brush attachment is being used during vacuuming, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean lint-free colourfast cloth with water or club soda. Microfibre cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the centre. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any colour transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by club soda or plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colourfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

Following the cleaning process, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

⚠ Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, & Other Plastic Surfaces

Use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

⚠ Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, spot lifters, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windscreen under certain conditions.

⚠ Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners may not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

Care of Seat Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean seat belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

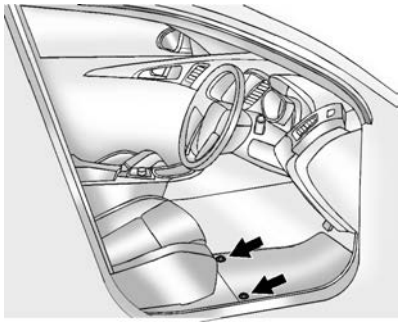
If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage:

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that certified floor mats be purchased. Non-certified floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats

Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock each retainer and remove.



Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.

Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place.

Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

✍ NOTES

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 11-1

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-2

General Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

See your Service/Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	SAE 5W-30; dexos (dexos™ 1)
Engine Cooling System	50% deionised water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant
High Voltage Battery Cooling System	50% deionised water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant
Power Electronics Cooling System	50% deionised water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid
Electric Drive Unit	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Service Parts Identification Label 12-2

Vehicle Data
Capacities and Specifications 12-3
Engine Drive Belt Routing . . . 12-5
Tyre Pressure 12-6

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)





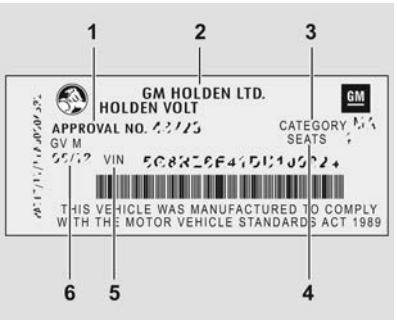
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is visible through the windscreen in the lower left hand corner.

The VIN is also located in the vehicle floor on the right hand side under a cover in front of the seat.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See “Engine Specifications” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-3* for the vehicle's engine code.

Identification Plate



An identification label is located on the front passenger door frame (B-pillar).

The label shows:

(1) Approval number

(2) Manufacturer

(3) Category

(4) Number of seats

(5) Vehicle identification number

(6) Compliance date

Service Parts Identification Label

The label is inside the right rear cargo storage door and has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Model designation.
- Paint information.
- Production options and special equipment.

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in metric and English conversions. Refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-2* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant label under the bonnet. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling Systems		
Engine	7.3 L	7.7 qt
High Voltage Battery	5.8 L	6.2 qt
Power Electronics	2.8 L	3.0 qt
Engine Oil with Filter	3.5 L	3.7 qt
Fuel Tank	35.2 L	9.3 gal
Electric Drive Unit	8.45 L	8.93 qt
Wheel Nut Torque	140N•m	100 lb ft
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual.		

Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Electric Drive Unit	Spark Plug Gap
1.4L L4	4	Automatic	0.7 mm (0.027 in)

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum vehicle carrying capacity

	Carrying capacity (occupants, accessories and luggage) (kg)
Volt	340

Note:

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly. See “Additional Weights” further on in this section.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle loads” later in this section.

Axle loads

Maximum front and rear axle loads

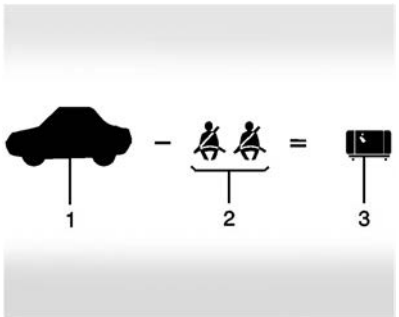
Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle.

Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

	Front axle load (kg)	Rear axle load (kg)
Volt	1167	996

Additional Weights

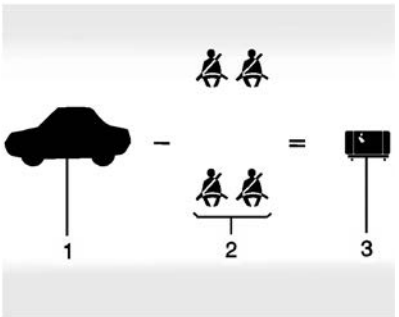
Example loading guide



Example 1:

1. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 340 kg)
2. Subtract occupant weight (example 2 x 68 kg = 136 kg)
3. Available luggage capacity (340 – 136 = 204 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded.

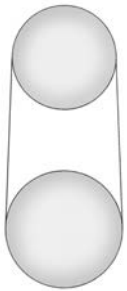


Example 2:

1. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 340 kg)
2. Subtract occupant weight (example 4 x 68 kg = 272 kg)
3. Available luggage capacity (340 – 272 = 68 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded.

Engine Drive Belt Routing



Tyre Pressure

Tyre size	Recommended pressure											
	Normal load				Eco normal load				Maximum load			
	Front		Rear		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
215/55 R17 94H	240	35	240	35	270	39	270	39	250	36	290	42

Customer Information

Customer Information
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 13-1
Customer Assistance Offices 13-1
Trademarks and License Agreements 13-2
Libcurl and Unzip Acknowledgements 13-2

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-5
Event Data Recorders 13-5
Automatic Crash Reporting System (ACRS) 13-6
Navigation System 13-7
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-7

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

We want you to be happy with your new vehicle, together with the people you deal with while you have the vehicle.

Normally, any problems with the sales, operation, servicing, parts/accessories, or the validity of original equipment supplied with your vehicle will be handled by your Holden Dealer Sales and Service Department.

We realise, however, that with the best intentions, misunderstandings sometimes occur.

Therefore, we suggest you discuss any concern with one of the Holden Dealer management people.

If you have not received satisfaction from the Sales Manager or Service Manager, go to the General Manager or to the Dealer Principal.

By now, you should have satisfaction. If not, Holden Customer Assistance office is at your disposal.

Customer Assistance Offices

Australia

The Holden Customer Assistance representatives can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Naturally, telephoning is the quickest and the best way to contact. However, if you prefer to write, the address is:

The Manager
Holden Customer Assistance Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your letter should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle Identification Number (ISOVIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write, however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this owner manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the warranty and owner assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glove box wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached at:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Assistance.

If you prefer to write, the address is:

The Manager
Holden Customer Assistance Centre
P.O. Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542
New Zealand

Trademarks and License Agreements

The Bluetooth® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.

Libcurl and Unzip Acknowledgements

Certain components include libcurl and unzip software. Below are the notices and licenses associated with this software.

This licence is issued by the relevant Licensors and will not affect your statutory rights against GM Holden Ltd or your Dealer under any Australian consumer legislation, including the Australian Consumer Law. Nothing in this licence is intended to limit or restrict your rights under the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty or the ACL.

libcurl:

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2010, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS," WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorisation of the copyright holder.

unzip:

This is version 2005-Feb-10 of the Info-ZIP copyright and license. The definitive version of this document should be available at ftp://ftp.info-zip.org/pub/infozip/license.html indefinitely.

Copyright (c) 1990-2005 Info-ZIP. All rights reserved.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Info-ZIP" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Mark Adler, John Bush, Karl Davis, Harald Denker, Jean-Michel Dubois, Jean-loup Gailly, Hunter Goatley, Ed Gordon, Ian Gorman, Chris Herborth, Dirk Haase, Greg Hartwig, Robert Heath, Jonathan Hudson, Paul Kienitz, David Kirschbaum, Johnny Lee, Onno van der Linden, Igor Mandrichenko, Steve P. Miller, Sergio Monesi, Keith Owens, George Petrov, Greg Roelofs, Kai Uwe Rommel, Steve Salisbury, Dave Smith, Steven M. Schweda,

Christian Spieler, Cosmin Truta, Antoine Verheijen, Paul von Behren, Rich Wales, Mike White

This software is provided “as is,” without warranty of any kind, express or implied. In no event shall Info-ZIP or its contributors be held liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special or consequential damages arising out of the use of or inability to use this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions.
2. Redistributions in binary form (compiled executables) must reproduce the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions in documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. The sole exception to this condition is redistribution of a standard UnZipSFX binary (including SFXWiz) as part of a self-extracting archive; that is permitted without inclusion of this license, as long as the normal SFX banner has not been removed from the binary or disabled.
3. Altered versions–including, but not limited to, ports to new operating systems, existing ports with new graphical interfaces, and dynamic, shared, or static library versions–must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source. Such altered versions also must not be misrepresented as being Info-ZIP releases–including, but not limited to, labelling of the altered versions with the names “Info-ZIP” (or any variation thereof, including, but not limited to, different capitalisations), “Pocket UnZip,” “WiZ” or “MacZip” without the explicit permission of Info-ZIP. Such altered versions are further prohibited from misrepresentative use of the Zip-Bugs or Info-ZIP e-mail addresses or of the Info-ZIP URL(s).
4. Info-ZIP retains the right to use the names “Info-ZIP,” “Zip,” “UnZip,” “UnZipSFX,” “WiZ,” “Pocket UnZip,” “Pocket Zip,” and “MacZip” for its own source and binary releases.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and electric drive unit performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and to deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g. name, gender or age) or crash location is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defence of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Automatic Crash Reporting System (ACRS)

This vehicle is equipped with an Automatic Crash Reporting System (ACRS), which is capable of recording, storing, and transmitting pre-crash and post-crash data in the event the vehicle is involved in a crash.

This data could include:

- Information about the vehicle, such as the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and device indicator;
- Information about the crash, such as the location, direction, speed of the vehicle and the change in speed of the vehicle;
- Information about the performance or status of other systems in the vehicle, such as airbag deployment, ignition status, seatbelt status, and battery diagnostic information.

In the event the ACRS detects that the vehicle has been in a crash (for example, where the vehicle's sensors indicate an airbag deployment or near deployment, rollover, or near rollover, or if there had been a rear impact), the ACRS will automatically transmit certain vehicle and crash data using wireless communication networks to OnStar® LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of General Motors Company, (collectively “GM”), both located in Detroit, Michigan, U.S.A.

In some post-crash situations, GM may find it necessary to periodically access data relating to the vehicle, such as the status of certain components, like the vehicle's battery, and the location of the vehicle, to determine whether additional measures, including disconnecting the battery, are required to protect the vehicle from further damage or for safety reasons. The data may continue to be accessed at various intervals for a period of up to 30 days following the crash.

OnStar® may provide some or all of this information to authorised engineers and safety experts at GM. All data will be transmitted using the appropriate technical, administrative, and physical safeguards.

Refer to the Terms and Conditions of the ACRS available at www.holden.com.au for more information. Subject to applicable law, when you or any other persons use, buy, or lease this vehicle with an enabled ACRS, you and all such other persons accept those Terms and Conditions.

YOU MAY CHOOSE TO HAVE THE ACRS IN YOUR VEHICLE DISABLED AT ANY TIME. PLEASE CONTACT YOUR HOLDEN DEALER FOR FURTHER INFORMATION.

Navigation System

Use of the navigation system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. See *Using the Navigation System on page 7-33* for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

✍ NOTES

A

Accessories and Modifications 10-2
Accessory Power 9-14
Acknowledgements
Libcurl and Unzip 13-2
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-51
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 10-12
Air Conditioning 8-1
Air Vents 8-8
Airbag System
Where Are the Airbags? 3-16
Airbags
Readiness Light 5-13
System Check 3-15
Alarm
Vehicle Security 2-12
Alert
Pedestrian Friendly 5-3
AM-FM Radio 7-10
Anchor Fittings
Top Tether 3-26
Anti-theft
Locking System 2-14
Antilock Brake
System (ABS) 9-24
Warning Light 5-17
Appearance Care
Exterior 10-66
Interior 10-70
Audio
Bluetooth 7-31
Audio Players 7-23
CD 7-23
Audio System
Radio Reception 7-13
Automatic
Climate Control System 8-1
Door Locks 2-9
Headlamp System 6-2
Automatic Crash Reporting System (ACRS) 13-6
Auxiliary
Devices 7-31

B

Battery 10-21
Gauge 5-11
High Voltage 5-11
Jump Starting 10-57
Battery and Charging Messages. 5-39
Bluetooth 7-58
Bluetooth Audio 7-31
Bonnet 10-5
Bonnet, Door, Hatch Open Light 5-22
Brake
Parking, Electric 9-25
System Warning Light 5-16
Brakes 10-19
Antilock 9-24
Fluid 10-20
Regenerative Braking 9-27
System Messages 5-40
Braking 9-5
Break-In, New Vehicle 9-11

Bulb Replacement 10-28
Halogen Bulbs 10-25
Headlamp Aiming 10-25
Headlamps 10-25
Number Plate Lamps 10-27
Reverse Lamps 10-27
Buying New Tyres 10-45

C

Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 9-37
Capacities and
Specifications 12-3
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 9-21
Hatch 2-11
Winter Driving 9-8
Cargo
Cover 4-4
Cautions, Danger, and
Warnings iii
CD Player 7-23
Chains, Tyre 10-48
Charge Cord 9-46
Charging 5-25
Delay Override 9-43
Electrical Requirements 9-48
Plug-In 9-41
Charging Status Screens 9-44
Charging System Light 5-14
Check
Engine Light 5-14
Child Restraints
Infants and Young
Children 3-21
ISOFIX 3-30
Older Children 3-19
Securing 3-30, 3-31
Systems 3-23
Cleaning
Exterior Care 10-66
Interior Care 10-70
Climate Control Systems
Automatic 8-1
Clock 5-36
Cluster, Instrument 5-6
Compartments
Storage 4-1
Compressor Kit, Tyre
Sealant 10-50
Configure Menu 7-47
Control
Traction and Electronic
Stability 9-27
Control of a Vehicle 9-5
Convex Mirrors 2-15
Coolant
Engine 10-15
Engine Temperature
Warning Light 5-20
Cooling System 10-13–10-15
Engine Messages 5-41
Cover
Cargo 4-4
Crash Reporting System
Automatic 13-6
Cruise Control 9-30
Light 5-22
Messages 5-40
Customer Assistance
Offices 13-1
Customer Satisfaction
Procedure 13-1

D

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions iii
Data Recorders, Event 13-5
Database Coverage Explanations 7-52
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Defensive Driving 9-5
Delayed Charging Override 9-43
Destination, Navigation 7-39
Devices
Auxiliary 7-31
USB 7-24
Distracted Driving 9-4
Dome Lamps 6-5
Door
Ajar Messages 5-40
Locks 2-8
Power Locks 2-9
Drive Belt Routing, Engine 12-5
Drive Mode Messages 5-41
Drive Unit
Electric 9-22
Driver Efficiency Gauge 5-11
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 5-37
Driver Mode 9-17
Driving
Defensive 9-5
Highway Hypnosis 9-8
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-8
If the Vehicle is Stuck 9-10
Loss of Control 9-6
Wet Roads 9-7
Winter 9-8
Driving for Better Energy Efficiency 1-22, 9-2

E

Electric Drive Unit 9-22
Electric Drive Unit Messages 5-41
Electric Drive Unit Shift Lock Control Function Check 10-23
Electric Mode 9-16
Electric Parking Brake 9-25
Electric Parking Brake Light ... 5-16
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 9-51
Electrical Requirements for Battery Charging 9-48
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-29
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 10-33, 10-34
Overload 10-29
Rear Fuse Panel 10-36
Energy Efficiency Driving 1-22, 9-2
Energy Information 5-35
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 10-12
Check and Service Engine Soon Light 5-14
Compartment Overview 10-7
Coolant 10-15
Coolant Temperature Warning Light 5-20
Cooling System 10-13–10-15
Cooling System Messages ...5-41
Drive Belt Routing 12-5
Exhaust 9-21
Oil Life System 10-11
Oil Messages 5-41

Engine (cont'd)
Overheating 10-18
Pressure Light 5-20
Running While Parked 9-22
Engine Unavailable
Out of Fuel 9-19
Entry Lighting 6-6
Event Data Recorders 13-5
Exit Lighting 6-6
Extended Range Mode 9-17
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1

F

Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 10-12
Flashers, Hazard Warning 6-3
Flat Tyre 10-48
Floor Console Storage 4-1
Floor Mats 10-73
Fluid
Brakes 10-20
Washer 10-18
Fog Lamps
Rear 6-4
Fog Light, Rear 5-22
Folding Mirrors 2-15
Forward Collision Alert
(FCA) System 9-32
Forward Collision Alert
(FCA) Warning Light 5-18
Front Seats
Adjustment 3-3
Heated 3-5
Fuel 9-49
Additives 9-49
Filling a Portable Fuel
Container 9-50
Filling the Tank 9-50
Gauge 5-11
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-21
System Messages 5-42
Function Check
Electric Drive Unit Shift
Lock Control 10-23
Fuses
Engine Compartment
Fuse Block 10-29
Instrument Panel
Fuse Block 10-33, 10-34
Rear Fuse Panel 10-36

G

Gauges
Battery 5-11
Driver Efficiency 5-11
Fuel 5-11
Odometer 5-10
Speedometer 5-10
Trip Odometer 5-10
Warning Lights and
Indicators 5-5
General Information
Service and Maintenance 11-1
Towing 9-51
Vehicle Care 10-2
Global Positioning
System (GPS) 7-50
Glovebox 4-1

H

Halogen Bulbs 10-25
Hatch 2-11
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-3
Head Restraints 3-1
Headlamp Flash 6-2
Headlamp Levelling Control 6-3

Headlamps 10-25
Aiming 10-25
Automatic 6-2
Bulb Replacement 10-25
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Headlamp Flash 6-2
High-Beam On Light 5-22
High/Low Beam Changer 6-1
Lamps On Reminder 5-22
Heated Front Seats 3-5
Heated Mirrors 2-15
Heating and Air Conditioning ... 8-1
High Voltage Battery Gauge ... 5-11
High Voltage Devices and Wiring 10-28
High-Beam On Light 5-22
Highway Hypnosis 9-8
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-8
Hold Mode Light 5-18
Horn 1-11, 5-3
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 3-10

I

Indicator
Vehicle Ahead 5-18
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 3-21
Info
Quick 7-13
Information
Energy 5-35
Instrument Cluster 5-6
Instrument Panel
Storage Area 4-1
Instrument Panel Overview 1-2
Interior Rear view Mirrors 2-16
Internet Radio
Pandora 7-13
Introduction iii
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 3-30

J

Jump Starting 10-57

K

Key and Lock Messages 5-42
Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 2-2
Keys 2-1

L

Lamps
Daytime Running (DRL) 6-2
Dome 6-5
Exterior Controls 6-1
Malfunction Indicator 5-14
Messages 5-43
Number Plate 10-27
On Reminder 5-22
Reading 6-5
Rear Fog 6-4
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 9-39
Lane Departure Warning Light 5-18
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-11
LED Lighting 10-25
Levelling Control
Headlamp 6-3

Libcurl and Unzip
Acknowledgements 13-2
Lifting the Vehicle, Tyres 10-2
Light
Hold Mode 5-18
Ready Indicator 5-21
Vehicle Ready 5-21
Lighting
Entry 6-6
Exit 6-6
Illumination Control 6-5
LED 10-25
Lights
Airbag Readiness 5-13
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 5-17
Bonnet, Door, Hatch Open 5-22
Brake System Warning 5-16
Charging System 5-14
Cruise Control 5-22
Electric Parking Brake 5-16
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 5-20
Engine Oil Pressure 5-20
Fog Lamp, Rear 5-22
Headlamp Flash 6-2
Lights (cont'd)
High-Beam On 5-22
High/Low Beam Changer 6-1
Lane Departure Warning 5-18
Low Fuel Warning 5-21
Seat Belt Reminders 5-12
Security 5-21
Service Electric Parking Brake 5-17
Sport Mode 5-18
StabiliTrak® OFF 5-19
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® 5-19
Traction Off 5-19
Tyre Pressure 5-20
Locking Systems, Anti-theft 2-14
Locks
Automatic Door 2-9
Door 2-8
Lockout Protection 2-10
Power Door 2-9
Safety 2-10
Loss of Control 9-6
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-21

M

Maintenance Modes 9-19
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-2
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-14
Map Data Updates 7-52
Maps 7-36
Menu
Configure 7-47
Messages
Airbag System 5-45
Brake System 5-40
Door Ajar 5-40
Drive Mode 5-41
Electric Drive Unit 5-41
Engine Cooling System 5-41
Engine Oil 5-41
Fuel System 5-42
Key and Lock 5-42
Lamp 5-43
Object Detection System 5-43
Propulsion Power 5-44
Ride Control System 5-44
Security 5-45
Service Vehicle 5-45

Messages (cont'd)
Starting the Vehicle 5-46
Tyre 5-47
Vehicle 5-39
Vehicle Reminder 5-47
Vehicle Speed 5-47
Messaging
Text 7-64
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rear View 2-16
Convex 2-15
Folding 2-15
Heated 2-15
Power 2-15
Mirrors, Interior Rear view 2-16
Mode
Electric 9-16
Extended Range 9-17
Hold Light 5-18
Modes
Driver Selected 9-17
Maintenance 9-19
Monitor System, Tyre Pressure 10-40

N

Navigation
Destination 7-39
Symbols 7-36
Using the System 7-33
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-7
New vehicle running-in 9-11

O

Object Detection System
Messages 5-43
Odometer 5-10
Trip 5-10
Oil
Engine 10-8
Engine Oil Life System 10-11
Messages 5-41
Pressure Light 5-20
Older Children, Restraints 3-19
Out of Fuel/Engine Unavailable 9-19
Outlets
Power 5-4
Overheating, Engine 10-18
Overview, Infotainment System 7-1

P

Pandora Internet Radio 7-13
Park
Shifting Into 9-14
Shifting Out of 9-15
Parking
Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 10-24
Over Things That Burn 9-16
Parking Assist
Ultrasonic 9-34
Pedestrian Alert 5-3
Personalisation
Vehicle 5-47
Phone
Bluetooth 7-58
Plug-In Charging 9-41

Power
Button 9-11
Door Locks 2-9
Flows 5-24
Mirrors 2-15
Outlets 5-4
Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 9-14
Windows 2-16
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 3-14
Pressure
Tyre 12-6
Privacy
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-7
Problems with Route Guidance 7-52
Propulsion Power Messages 5-44

Q

Quick Info 7-13

R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-7
Radios
AM-FM Radio 7-10
Reception 7-13
Reading Lamps 6-5
Ready Indicator 5-21
Rear Fog Light 5-22
Rear Fog Lights 6-4
Rear Seats 3-7
Rear View Mirrors
Automatic Dimming 2-16
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-37
Reclining Seatbacks 3-4
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-2
Regenerative Braking 9-27
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-2
Remote Start 2-6
Replacement Bulbs 10-28
Replacement Parts
Airbags 3-18
Replacing Airbag System 3-18
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 3-14
Requirements
Electrical Battery Charging ... 9-48
Restraints
Where to Put 3-25
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-14
Ride Control Systems
Messages 5-44
Roads
Driving, Wet 9-7
Rotation, Tyres 10-43
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 12-5
Running the Vehicle While Parked 9-22

S

Safety Locks 2-10
Safety System Check 3-14
Sealant Kit, Tyre 10-50
Seat Belts 3-9
Care 3-14
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 3-10
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-11

Seat Belts (cont'd)
Reminders 5-12
Replacing after a Crash 3-14
Use During Pregnancy 3-14
Seats
Adjustment, Front 3-3
Head Restraints 3-1
Heated Front 3-5
Rear 3-7
Reclining Seatbacks 3-4
Securing Child
Restraints 3-30, 3-31
Security
Light 5-21
Messages 5-45
Vehicle 2-12
Vehicle Alarm 2-12
Service
Accessories and
Modifications 10-2
Doing Your Own Work 10-5
Engine Soon Light 5-14
Maintenance, General
Information 11-1
Parts Identification Label 12-2
Vehicle Messages 5-45
Service Electric Parking
Brake Light 5-17
Shifting
Into Park 9-14
Out of Park 9-15
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 6-4
Specifications and
Capacities 12-3
Speedometer 5-10
Sport Mode Light 5-18
StabiliTrak
OFF Light 5-19
Start
Remote 2-6
Starting and Stopping the
Vehicle 9-12
Starting the Vehicle
Messages 5-46
Status Screens
Charging 9-44
Steering 9-5
Wheel Adjustment 5-2
Wheel Controls 5-2
Storage Areas
Cargo Cover 4-4
Floor Console 4-1
Glovebox 4-1
Instrument Panel 4-1
Umbrella 4-4
Storage Compartments 4-1
Storing the Tyre Sealant
and Compressor Kit 10-57
Stuck Vehicle 9-10
Sun Visors 2-18
Symbols iv
Symbols, Navigation 7-36
System
Automatic Crash Reporting . . . 13-6
Forward Collision
Alert (FCA) 9-32
System Operation 9-16

T

Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 12-6
Text 7-64
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-14
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 3-26
Total Vehicle Range 5-12

Towing
General Information 9-51
Vehicle 10-63
Traction
Control System (TCS)/
StabiliTrak® Light 5-19
Off Light 5-19
Traction Control/Electronic
Stability Control 9-27
Trip Odometer 5-10
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 6-4
Tyre Pressure 12-6
Tyres
Buying New Tyres 10-45
Chains 10-48
Different Size 10-46
If a Tyre Goes Flat 10-48
Inflation Monitor System 10-41
Inspection 10-43
Lifting the Vehicle 10-2
Messages 5-47
Pressure Light 5-20
Pressure Monitor System ... 10-40
Rotation 10-43
Tyres (cont'd)
Sealant and
Compressor Kit 10-50
Sealant and Compressor
Kit, Storing 10-57
Wheel Alignment and
Tyre Balance 10-46
Wheel Replacement 10-46
When It Is Time for New
Tyres 10-44

U

Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-34
Umbrella Storage 4-4
Updates
Map Data 7-52
USB 7-24
Using the System 7-5
Using This Manual iii

V

Vehicle
Alarm System 2-12
Control 9-5
Identification
Number (VIN) 12-1
Vehicle (cont'd)
Messages 5-39
Personalisation 5-47
Positioning 7-51
Reminder Messages 5-47
Security 2-12
Speed Messages 5-47
Starting and Stopping 9-12
Total Range 5-12
Towing 10-63
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 5-18
Vehicle Care
Storing the Tyre Sealant
and Compressor Kit 10-57
Tyre Pressure 10-38
Vehicle Ready Light 5-21
Ventilation, Air 8-8
Visors 2-18
Voice Recognition 7-53
Voltage Devices and
Wiring 10-28

W

Warning
Brake System Light 5-16
Lane Departure (LDW) 9-39
Warning Light
Forward Collision
Alert (FCA) 5-18
Warning Lights, Gauges, and
Indicators 5-5
Warnings iii
Cautions and Danger iii
Hazard Flashers 6-3
Washer Fluid 10-18
Wheels
Alignment and Tyre
Balance 10-46
Different Size 10-46
Replacement 10-46
When It Is Time for New
Tyres 10-44
Where to Put the Restraint 3-25
Windows 2-16
Power 2-16
Windscreen
Wiper/Washer 5-3
Winter
Driving 9-8
Wiring, High Voltage
Devices 10-28